#### **PCT**

# WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION International Bureau



### INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6:

C07D 495/04, 487/04, 471/04, A61K
31/55, C07D 513/04 // (C07D 495/04,
333:00, 223:00) (C07D 487/04, 237:00,
223:00) (C07D 471/04, 223:00, 221:00)
(C07D 513/04, 281:00, 221:00)

(11) International Publication Number:

WO 96/22294

(43) International Publication Date:

25 July 1996 (25.07.96)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US96/01096

A1

(22) International Filing Date:

16 January 1996 (16.01.96)

(30) Priority Data:

08/373,839

17 January 1995 (17.01.95)

US

(71) Applicant: AMERICAN CYANAMID COMPANY [US/US]; Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US).

(72) Inventors: ALBRIGHT, Jay, Donald; 5 Clifford Court, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). DELOS SANTOS, Efren, Guillermo; 38 Birchwood Terrace, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US).

(74) Agents: ALICE, Ronald, W.; American Home Products Corporation, Five Giralda Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US) et al.

(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AU, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, HU, IS, JP, KG, KP, KR, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, SG, SI, SK, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

#### Published

With international search report.

Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: BICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES AS VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

#### (57) Abstract

This invention relates to new bicyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of formula (I) which are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

•

### FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

| AM | Armenia                  | GB | United Kingdom               | MW  | Malawi                   |
|----|--------------------------|----|------------------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| AT | Austria                  | GE | Georgia                      | MX  | Mexico                   |
| AU | Australia                | GN | Guinea                       | NE  | Niger                    |
| BB | Barbados                 | GR | Greece                       | NL  | Netherlands              |
| BE | Belgium                  | HU | Hungary                      | NO  | Norway                   |
| BF | Burkina Faso             | 12 | Ireland                      | NZ  | New Zealand              |
| BG | Bulgaria                 | IT | Italy                        | PL  | Poland                   |
| BJ | Benin                    | JР | Japan                        | PT  | Portugal                 |
| BR | Brazil                   | KE | Kenya                        | RO  | Romania                  |
| BY | Belarus                  | KG | Kyrgystan                    | RU  | Russian Federation       |
| CA | Canada                   | KP | Democratic People's Republic | SD  | Sudan                    |
| CF | Central African Republic |    | of Korea                     | SE  | Sweden                   |
| CG | Congo                    | KR | Republic of Korea            | SG  | Singapore                |
| CH | Switzerland              | KZ | Kazakhstan                   | SI  | Slovenia                 |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire            | LI | Liechtenstein                | SK  | Slovakia                 |
| CM | Cameroon                 | LK | Sri Lanka                    | SN  | Senegal                  |
| CN | China                    | LR | Liberia                      | SZ  | Swaziland                |
| CS | Czechoslovakia           | LT | Lithuania                    | 110 | Chad                     |
| CZ | Czech Republic           | LU | Luxembourg                   | TG  | Togo                     |
| DE | Germany                  | LV | Larvia                       | TJ  | Tajikistan               |
| DK | Denmark                  | MC | Monaco                       | 17  | Trinidad and Tobago      |
| EE | Estonia                  | MD | Republic of Moldova          | UA  | Ukraine                  |
| ES | Spain                    | MG | Madagascar                   | UG  | Uganda                   |
| Fī | Finland                  | ML | Mali                         | us  | United States of America |
| FR | France                   | MN | Mongolia                     | UZ  | Uzbekistan               |
| GA | Gabon                    | MR | Mauritania                   | VN  | Viet Nam                 |

1

# BICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES AS VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

5

10

30

35

## Field of the Invention

This invention relates to new bicyclic nonpeptide vasopressin antagonists which are useful in
treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels
are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in
disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption
and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and
coronary vasoconstriction.

# 15 2. Background of the Invention

Vasopressin is released from the posterior pituitary either in response to increased plasma osmolarity detected by brain osmoreceptors or decreased blood volume and blood pressure sensed by low-pressure volume receptors and arterial baroreceptors. The hormone exerts its action through two well defined receptor subtypes: vascular V<sub>1</sub> and renal epithelial V<sub>2</sub> receptors. Vasopressin-induced antidiuresis, mediated by renal epithelial V<sub>2</sub> receptors, helps to maintain normal plasma osmolarity, blood volume and blood pressure.

Vasopressin is involved in some cases of congestive heart failure where peripheral resistance is increased. V1 antagonists may decrease systemic vascular resistance, increase cardiac output and prevent vasopressin induced coronary vasoconstriction. Thus, in conditions with vasopressin induce increases in total peripheral resistance and altered local blood flow, V1-antagonists may be therapeutic agents. V1 antagonists may decrease blood pressure, induced hypotensive effects and thus be therapeutically useful in treatment of some types of hypertension.

-2-

The blockage of V2 receptors is useful in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of free water. Antidiuresis is regulated by the hypothalamic release of vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) which binds to specific receptors on renal collecting tubule cells. This binding stimulates adenylyl cyclase and promotes the cAMP-mediated incorporation of water pores into the luminal surface of these cells. V2 antagonists may correct the fluid retention in congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis, nephritic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia.

10

Elevated vasopressin levels occur in congestive heart failure which is more common in older patients with chronic heart failure. In patients with hyponatremic 15 congestive heart failure and elevated vasopressin levels, a V2 antagonist may be beneficial in promoting free water excretion by antagonizing the action of antidiuretic hormone, On the basis of biochemical and pharmacological effects of the hormone, antagonists of vasopressin are 20 expected to be therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic 25 syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

The following prior art references describe peptide vasopressin antagonists: M. Manning et al.,

J. Med. Chem., 35, 382(1992); M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 3895(1992); H. Gavras and B. Lammek,

U.S. Patent 5,070,187 (1991); M. Manning and W.H. Sawyer,

U.S. Patent 5,055,448(1991) F.E. Ali, U.S. Patent
4,766,108(1988); R.R. Ruffolo et al., Drug News and

Perspective, 4(4), 217, (May)(1991). P.D. Williams et al., have reported on potent hexapeptide oxytocin

antagonists [J. Med. Chem., 35, 3905(1992)] which also exhibit weak vasopressin antagonist activity in binding to  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  receptors. Peptide vasopressin antagonists suffer from a lack of oral activity and many of these peptides are not selective antagonists since they also exhibit partial agonist activity.

Non-peptide vasopressin antagonists have recently been disclosed, Y. Yamamura et al., Science, 252, 579(1991); Y. Yamamura et al., Br. J. Pharmacol, 105, 787(1992); Ogawa et al., (Otsuka Pharm Co., LTD.) EP 10 0514667-A1; JP 04154765-A; EPO 382185-A2; W09105549 and U.S.5, 258, 510; WO 9404525 Yamanouchi Pharm.Co., Ltd., WO 9420473; WO 9412476; WO 9414796; Fujisawa Co. Ltd., EP 620216-Al Ogawa et al, (Otsuka Pharm. Co.) EP 470514A 15 disclose carbostyril derivatives and pharmaceutical compositions containing the same. Non-peptide oxytocin and vasopressin antagonist have been disclosed by Merck and Co.; M.G. Bock and P.D. Williams, EP 0533242A; M.G. Bock et al., EP 0533244A; J.M. Erb, D.F. Verber, P.D. 20 Williams, EP 0533240A; K. Gilbert et al., EP 0533243A.

Premature birth can cause infant health problems and mortality and a key mediator in the mechanism of labor is the peptide hormone oxytocin. On the basis of the pharmacological action of oxytocin, antagonists of this hormone are useful in the prevention of preterm labor, B.E. Evans et al., J. Med. Chem. 35, 3919(1992), J. Med. Chem., 36, 3993(1993) and references therein. The compounds of this invention are antagonists of the peptide hormone oxytocin and are useful in the control of premature birth.

25

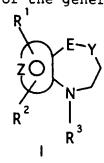
30

35

The present invention relates to novel tricyclic derivatives which exhibit antagonist activity at  $V_1$  and/or  $V_2$  receptors and exhibit in vivo vasopressin antagonist activity. The compounds also exhibit antagonist activity at oxytocin receptors.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

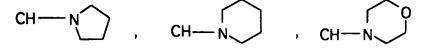
This invention relates to new compounds selected from those of the general Formula I:



wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the noieties:

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -C[N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,



15

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ -C6), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:



5 represents: (1) a fused unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C1-C3) lower alkoxy or (C1-C3) lower alkylamino; (2) a fused 10 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) hetero-cyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic 15 (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom;

(C1-C3) lower alkoxy; R<sup>3</sup> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the 20 group consisting of:

wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are

optionally substituted by (C1-C3) lower alkyl, halogen, or

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3),

$$R^1$$
 $CO$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $SO_2$ 

5

10

-SO2-lower alkyl(C1-C3);  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as  $(C_3-C_6)$  cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently

10

selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{R_{b}}{\swarrow} , -(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{}{\bigcirc} ,$$
 $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{}{\bigcirc} ,$ 

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_{\rm b}$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

$$R^8$$
 $CH_2$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 
 $R^8$ 

or -CH2-K' wherein K' is (C1-C3)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

- wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C1-C3) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), CHO, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy, -CO2lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; 10
  - (c) a moiety of the formula:

wherein R<sub>c</sub> is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub>), OH,

O | | -O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-( $CH_2$ )<sub>2</sub>- $N$ - $R_b$  , -NH( $CH_2$ )<sub>q</sub>- $CON$ - $R_b$  ,

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N < R_b - O-(CH_2)_2N < R_b$$

wherein Ra and Rb are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

5

### -M-Rd

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6), when M is O, S, NH, NCH3 and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$-(CH_{2})_{p}$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bind or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

10 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
 $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{9}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

-11-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C1-C3) NHCO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), and NSO2lower alkyl(C1-C3); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and; R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within the group of the compounds defined by

15 Formula I, certain subgroups of compounds are broadly preferred. Broadly preferred are those compounds wherein R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:

and Ar is selected from the moiety:

$$- R^{5}$$

$$R^{7}$$

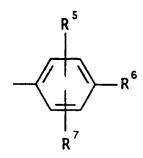
20

wherein  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are as herein-before defined.

Especially preferred are compounds wherein  $\mathbb{R}^3$  is the moiety:



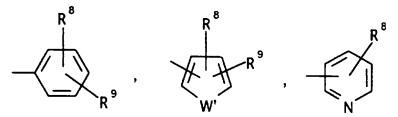
Ar is selected from the moiety:



R<sup>6</sup> is

5

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C3 to C6 cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl;  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$ ,  $R^7$  as hereinbefore defined; and Ar' is selected from the moieties:



10

wherein  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$  and W' are as hereinbefore defined. Also especially preferred are compounds wherein Y is CH2 and E in Formula I is -CH2, -CH0H, -CHNH2, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CHN[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2 and

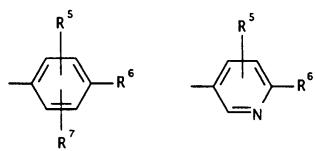
-13-

-CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); and R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are as hereinbefore defined.

The most preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is CH2 and E is -CH2, -CHOH, -CHNH2, -CHNH-lower alkyl (C1-C3), -CHN[lower alkyl (C1-C3)]2 and -CHO lower alkyl (C1-C3);

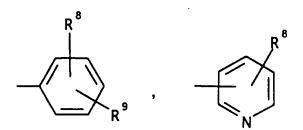
R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety

10 Ar is selected from the moieties:



R6 is

(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-cycloalkyl wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-15 C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl;  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$  are as hereinbefore defined; and Ar' is a moiety:



wherein  ${\bf R}^{\bf 8}$  and  ${\bf R}^{\bf 9}$  are as previously defined.

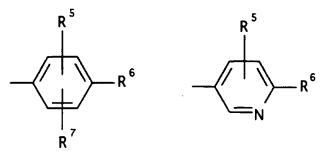
The most highly broadly preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is CH2 and E is -CH2, -CHOH, -CHNH2, -CHNH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -CHN[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )]2 and -CHO lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), wherein the moiety:



is a fused unsubstituted or substituted thiophene, furan, pyrrole, pyrazole or pyridine ring;  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ , and  $R^9$  are as previously defined;  $R^3$  is the moiety:

wherein Ar is:

15



and  $R^6$  is selected from the group

-15-

where Ar' is selected from the group

$$\mathbb{R}^{8}$$
,  $\mathbb{R}^{9}$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 

and W' and cycloalkyl are as previously described.

More particularly preferred are compounds of the formula:

$$R^1$$
 $R^2$ 
 $R^3$ 

wherein E is selected from -CH<sub>2</sub>, -CHOH, -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHNHlower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CHN[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub> and -CHO
lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

 $\mathbb{R}^3$  is the moiety:

5

wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

R6 is

and Ar' is selected from the moieties:

$$\mathbb{R}^{8}$$
  $\mathbb{R}^{5}$   $\mathbb{R}^{9}$  ,  $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 

5

wherein  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ , cycloalkyl and W' are as hereinbefore described.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formula:

10

wherein E is selected from  $-CH_2$ , -CHOH,  $-CHNH_2$ , -CHNH-

lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -CHN[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )]2 and -CHO lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^3$  is the moiety:



5 wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

R6 is

Ar' is selected from the moieties:

10

wherein  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$ ,  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ , cycloalkyl and W' are as hereinbefore described.

More particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:

$$R^{1}$$
 $R^{2}$ 
 $R^{3}$ 
and
 $R^{2}$ 
 $R^{3}$ 
 $R^{3}$ 

wherein E is selected from  $-CH_2$ , -CHOH,  $-CHNH_2$ , -CHNH- lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CHN[lower alkyl(<math>C_1-C_3$ )]<sub>2</sub> and -CHO lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ );

5  $R^3$  is the moiety:

wherein Ar is the moiety:

R<sup>6</sup> is

10

$$\begin{bmatrix} R \\ I \end{bmatrix}^{a}$$
  $\begin{bmatrix} R \\ I \end{bmatrix}^{a}$  -NCOCH<sub>2</sub>Ar', -NCO(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-cycloalkyl

wherein  $R_{\mbox{\scriptsize a}}$  is independently selected from hydrogen or -CH3; Ar' is selected from the moieties:

wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^5$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^7$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^8$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^9$ , and W' are as hereinbefore described.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of

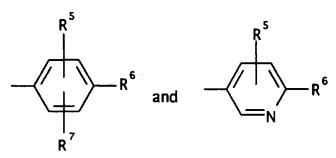
5 the formulae:

$$R^{1} \xrightarrow{R^{2}} R^{3}$$
 and 
$$R^{3}$$

wherein E is selected from  $-CH_2$ , -CHOH,  $-CHNH_2$ , -CHNH-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CHN[lower alkyl(<math>C_1-C_3$ )]<sub>2</sub> and -CHO lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ );

10  $R^3$  is the moiety:

herein Ar is selected from the moieties:



 $R^6$  is

$$R_{3}$$
 Ra | -NCOAr', -NCO lower alkyl( $C_{3}$ - $C_{8}$ ),  $R_{3}$  | -NCOO lower alkyl( $C_{3}$ - $C_{8}$ )

 $R_{\rm a}$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5 and Ar' is selected from the moieties:

$$\mathbb{R}^{8}$$
 ,  $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 

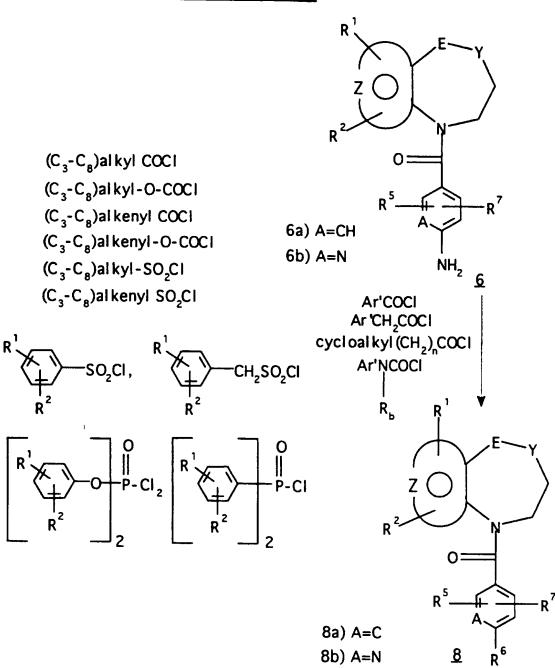
5 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ , and  $R^9$  are as hereinbefore defined.

Compounds of this invention may be prepared as shown in Scheme I by reaction of azepine derivatives of Formula 3 with a substituted or unsubstituted 4-nitro-10 benzoyl chloride 4a or a substituted or unsubstituted 6nitronicotinoyl chloride  $\underline{4b}$  to give the intermediate  $\underline{5a}$ and 5b. Reduction of the nitro group in intermediate 5gives the 4-aminobenzoyl derivative 6a and the 6-aminonicotinoyl derivative 6b. The reduction of the nitro group in intermediate 5 may be carried out under cataly-15 tic reduction conditions (hydrogen-Pd/C; Pd/C-hydrazineethanol) or under chemical reduction conditions (SnCl2ethanol; Zn-acetic acid TiCl3) and related reduction conditions known in the art for converting a nitro group to an amino group. The conditions for conversion of the 20 nitro group to the amino group are chosen on the basis of compatability with the preservation of other func-tional groups in the molecule.

Reaction of compounds of Formula <u>6</u> with aroyl chloride or related activated aryl carboxylic acids in

solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine and diisopropylethylamine or pyridine and the like, affords the compounds 8 vasopressin antagonists.

### Scheme 1 (cont'd)



Reaction of bicyclic derivatives of Formula  $\underline{6}$  with either a carbamoyl derivative  $\underline{9}$  or a isocyanate

-23-

derivative  $\underline{10}$  gives compounds (Scheme 2) of Formula  $\underline{11}$  which are vasopressin antagonists of Formula I wherein  $R^6$  is

5

## Scheme 2

Reaction of bicyclic derivatives of Formula <u>6</u> with arylacetic acids, activated as the acid chlorides <u>12</u>, anhydrides, mixed anhydrides or activated with known activating reagents, gives compounds <u>13</u> (Scheme 3).

5

## Scheme 3

-25-

The compounds of Formula I wherein E, Y,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$  and  $R^4$  are as defined and the aryl of  $R^3$  (-COAr) is

may be prepared, as shown in Scheme 4, by reacting an activated ester of the indole-5-carboxylic acids 14 with bicyclic derivatives 3a and 3b. The indole-5-carboxy-lic acids 14 may be activated by preparing the anhy-dride, a mixed anhydride or reacting with diethyl

cyanophosphonate, N,N-carbonyldiimidazole or related peptide coupling reagents. As an example, the derivative 15 may be prepared by the reaction of acid 14 and N,N-carbonyldiimidazole in tetrahydrofuran; the solvent is removed and the derivative reacted with 3 at 100°C to 120°C without a solvent. Alternatively, 3 may be reacted with 15 in a solvent such as toluene or xylene at reflux temperatures. The activating reagent for the indole acids 14 is chosen on the basis of its compatibility with the R<sup>4</sup> group and its reactivity with the 20 azepine derivative 3 to give the vasopressin antagonist

20 azepine derivative  $\underline{3}$  to give the vasopressin antagonist  $\underline{16}$ .

# Scheme 4

HO

$$R^4$$
 $R^4$ 
 $R^4$ 
 $R^4$ 
 $R^4$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $R^4$ 
 $R^4$ 

-27-

The compounds of Formula I wherein E, Y,  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^3$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^5$ , and  $\mathbb{R}^7$  are as defined and the  $\mathbb{R}^3$  (-COAr) aryl group is

$$- \bigvee_{\substack{R^5 \\ N \\ R^7}} R^6$$

wherein  ${\tt R}^6$  is  ${\tt -M-R}_d$  wherein M is O, S, NH, N-CH3 and  ${\tt R}_d$ 5 is as previously defined may be prepared as shown in Scheme 5 by first converting the azepine derivatives 3into the intermediate 17 and then reacting these nicotinolyl intermediates with derivatives of the formulae:  $HM-R_d$  in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base such as 10 N, N-diisopropylethylamine to give products 18. The best results are obtained in the displacement of the halogen in the nicotinolyl intermediates 17, when the halogen atom is a fluoro group. With nucleophilic amines (M=NH, NCH3) the reaction can be carried out with the 6-chloro, 15 bromo or fluoro derivatives 17 in (1) the absence of a non-nucloephilic base; (2) in a non-nucleophilic solvent; or (3) with excess amine and no solvent. With derivatives HORd the 6-fluoro derivative 17 is required 20 for satisfactory conversion of 17 to 18.

# Scheme 5

<u>18</u>

20

Alternatively, the products 18 may be prepared by first forming derivatives of the Formula 19 and then coupling these derivatives with the azepine compounds 3 (Scheme 6). The carboxylic acid intermediates are activated for coupling to the azepine compounds 3 by reaction with peptide coupling reagents, by conversion to the acid chlorides, anhydrides or mixed anhydrides.

#### Scheme 6

As an alternative method for synthesis of compounds of this invention as depicted in Formula I wherein  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ , A, E and Y are as previously defined and  $R^3$  is

is the coupling of aryl carboxylic acids <u>20</u> with the azepine derivative <u>3</u>. (Scheme 7)

The aryl carboxylic acids are activated for coupling by conversion to an acid chloride, bromide or anhydride or by first reacting with an activating reagent such as N.N-dicyclocarbodiimide, diethyl cyanophosphonate and related "peptide type" activating

-30-

reagents. The method of activating the acids 20 for coupling to the azepine derivative  $\underline{\mathbf{3}}$  is chosen on the basis of compatibility with other substituent groups in the molecule. The method of choice is the conversion of the aryl carboxylic acid 20 to the corresponding aroyl chloride. The aryl acid chlorides 21 may be prepared by standard procedures known in the art, such as reaction with thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride and the like. The coupling reaction is carried out in solvents such as halogenated hydrocarbons, toluene, xylene, tetrahydro-10 furan, dioxane in the presence of pyridine or tertiary bases such as triethylamine and the like (Scheme 7). Alternatively, the aroyl chlorides, prepared from the aryl carboxylic acids 20 may be reacted with derivatives 3 in pyridine with or without 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine 15 to give derivatives 22.

In general, when the aryl carboxylic acids are activated with N,N-carbonyldiimidazole and other "peptide type" activating reagents, higher temperatures are required than when the aroyl chlorides are used. The reaction may be carried out in a higher boiling solvent xylene or without a solvent (100°C to 150°C).

20

25

The activation of aryl carboxylic by conversion to the acid chlorides with thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride is preferred since the more reactive aroyl chlorides give better yields of product. The synthesis of selected examples is illustrated in Scheme 7.

# Scheme 7

Arc-OH 
$$\rightarrow$$
 Arc-Cl  $\rightarrow$  Arc-Cl  $\rightarrow$ 

The synthesis of compounds of Formula I wherein

 $\mathbb{R}^3$  is

the Ar group is

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
  $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 

5 R<sup>6</sup> is

25

and where Ar' is as previously defined is carried out according to Scheme 8. The azepine compounds are reacted 10 with mono-methyl terephythalyl chloride 23 (prepared from mono-methyl terephthalate and thionyl chloride) in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, toluene and the like to give derivatives 24. These ester intermediates 24 are hydrolyzed with two to 15 ten equivalents of an alkaline hydroxide such as potassium or sodium hydroxide in aqueous methanol or ethanol to give the corresponding acids after acidification and workup. The free acids are converted to the acid chlorides with thionyl chloride and these 20 acid chloride intermediates 25, reacted with aminoaryl derivatives of formula:

#### 26

wherein Ar' and  $R_{\text{a}}$  are as previously defined to give compounds  $\underline{27}$ .

-34-

Certain azepines such as compounds 34 and 35 useful for the preparation of compounds of this invention wherein E is a heteroatom, oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen may be synthesized according to Scheme 9. A halogenated 5 heterocycle containing an adjacent nitro group, as exemplified in formulle  $\underline{28}$ , is reacted with an  $\alpha$ substituted propionic acid or ester in the presence of a suitable base to give an intermediate 30. Reduction of the nitro group and ring closure gives the azepines 32 . 10 Reduction of the lactam 32 gives the azepines 33 which contain a fused heterocyclic ring. These intermediates 33 are then acylated with the appropriate aroyl chlorides or an activated aryl carboxylic acids to give directly compounds of this invention or intermediates 15 convertible to find products as hereinbefore described. Representative examples, which may be synthesized according to Scheme 9, are illustrated by structural formulae 34 and 35.

Intermediate azepines with a fused heterocyclic ring such as structures of formula <u>45</u>, <u>46</u> and <u>47</u>, noted as illustrative examples, may be prepared as shown in Scheme 10.

## Scheme 9

-36-

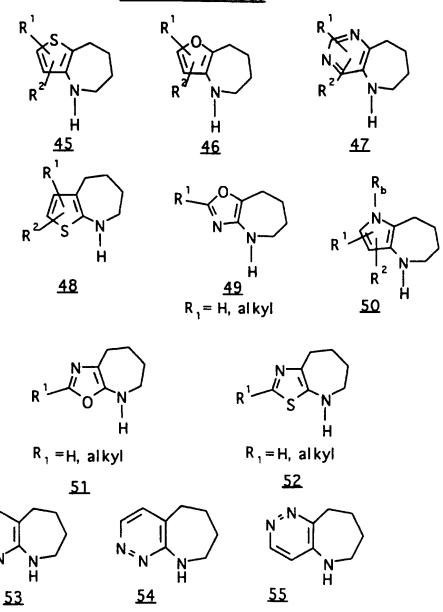
As shown in Scheme 10, expansion of a sixmembered ring into a seven-membered lactam is carried out by reaction of the ketone derivative 36 with hydroxyl amine to give the oxime derivative which in most cases exists as a mixture of syn and anti forms (structures 375 and 38). The mixture of oximes on reaction with 4methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride gives either a mixture of oxime  $\underline{Q}$ -tosylates or in some cases a single  $\underline{Q}$ -tosylate Heating the oxime Q-tosylates with potassium acetate in a alcohol-water mixture (such as ethanol-water or n-10 butanol-water) gives the 7-membered lactam derivatives Reduction of the lactam with diborane, or lithium aluminium hydride (LAH) affords the fused heterocyclic azepines 42. The azepines 42 may be converted to intermediates 43 and 44, which are useful in the 15 preparation of the novel compound of this invention. As hereinbefore stated, the heterocyclic azepines of structural types illustrated by formulae 45-55 may be prepared by the methods exempli-fied in Scheme 10 or literature methods for ring closures to azepines. 20

## Scheme 10

$$R_{a}^{1}, R_{b}^{1} = \text{al kyl, hal ogen}$$

$$R_{a}^{1}, R_{b}^{1$$

## Scheme 10 (cont'd)



10

15

Certain of the compounds of this invention wherein  $R_a$  is as previously defined are prepared by introduction of the  $R_{\mathbf{a}}$  either in a final step or in the penultimate step as shown in Scheme 11. In the derivatives <u>56</u> intro-duction of the Ra substituent (Ra not H) may be carried out in the final step by first forming the anion of the amide function of derivative <u>56</u> followed by the appro-priate alkylation of the nitrogen atom to give products 57. In derivatives where protection-deprotection is needed the derivatives 56 are converted to the protected intermediates 57a and 57b which on deprotection afford compounds 57. The  $R^{21}$  group may be a tertiary butoxy carbonyl group, an acetyl group or other known amine protecting moieties. The R<sup>22</sup> group may be a tertiary butylcarbonyl group, an acetyl group or other known hydroxy protecting moieties.

#### Scheme 11

$$R^{20} = -COAr'; -COCH_2Ar'; -CON-Ar';$$

$$-CO(CH_2)_n cycloalkyl; -COCHAr';$$

$$R_c$$

$$Q_2 \longrightarrow R^1 \qquad ; -SO_2CH_2 \longrightarrow R^2 \qquad ; -P \longrightarrow R^2 \qquad ;$$

$$Q_1 \longrightarrow Q_2 \longrightarrow Q_2 \qquad ; -CO_2 lower alkyl(C_3-C_8);$$

- -COlower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ ); -SO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ );
- -CO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>); CO lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>);
- -SO<sub>2</sub>lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>)

$$\frac{56}{R_{b}} \xrightarrow{R_{a}} R_{b} \xrightarrow{57} R_{a} = R_{b}NH(CH_{2})_{q}$$

$$R_{a}^{21} - N - (CH_{2})_{q} - CI(Br \text{ or } I)$$

$$R^{21} = t - Bac \text{ or, } Ac$$

$$\frac{56}{R^{22}-O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-CH_2CI(Br or I)} \xrightarrow{R_a = R^{22}-O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-CH_2-} \xrightarrow{R_a = HO(CH_2)_{1-2}} \frac{57}{R_a = HO(CH_2)_{1-2}}$$

-41-

Compounds of this invention represented by the formula  $\underline{60}$  may be prepared from the compounds represented by those of formula  $\underline{59}$  as shown in Scheme 12. The 6-chloro, bromo or fluoro intermediate  $\underline{17}$  is reacted with an amino derivative of the formula  $R_aNH_2$  wherein  $R_a$  is as hereinbefore defined to give compounds of the formula  $\underline{59}$ . Reaction of the 6-aminonicotinoyl deri-vative  $\underline{59}$  with an  $R^{20}$ -chloride wherein  $R^{23}$  is defined as shown in Scheme 12 affords compounds of this invention as exemplified by formula  $\underline{60}$ .

10

## Scheme 12

$$R_{a}^{2O} = -COAr'; -COCH_{2}Ar'; -COCH_{$$

- $-CO_2$ -lower alkyl( $C_3$ - $C_8$ )
- CO lower alkyl  $(C_3 C_8)$
- -SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>)
- -CO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>)
- -CO lower alkenyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>)
- -SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>)

-43-

#### Reference Example 1

#### 6.7-Dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one. Oxime

To a solution of 4-keto-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thionaphthene in 260 ml of ethanol is added 27.4 g of hydroxylamine hydrochloride. To the mixture is added 16.5 g of sodium acetate and 66 ml of water and then the mixture is refluxed for 3.5 hours; chilled in an ice bath and filtered. The solid is washed with water and ethanol to give 13 g of solid which is dried at 65°C under vacuum to give 11.7 g of crystals, m.p. 124-126°C (mainly one isomer syn or anti). The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum and extracted with 250 ml of dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 100 ml each of water, brine and then dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the solid dried at 65°C under vacuum to give 32 g of crystals, m.p. 106-109°C (mainly one isomer syn or anti).

10

15

20

25

#### Reference Example 2

### 6.7-Dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, Oxime-O-tosylate

To a stirred solution of 12.2 g of 6,7-di-hydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, oxime (mixture of isomers) in 26 ml of dry pyridine is cooled to 0°C is added 15.3 g of p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (all at once). After 5 minutes, a solid separates and the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the cold mixture is added 195 ml or 2N HCl and the mixture filtered to give a solid which is washed with water and dried (under vacuum) to give 21.5 g of product as crystals, m.p. 117°-120°C.

#### Reference Example 3

#### 5.6.7.8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3.2-b]azepin-5-one

A mixture of 21.45 g of 6,7-dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, oxime-Q-tosylate, 136.1 g of
potassium acetate, 528 ml of ethanol and 904 ml of water
is refluxed for 22 hours. The mixture is concentrated
under vacuum (to remove ethanol), chilled and filtered to
35 give a solid. The solid is washed with water, dried (in
air) and recrystallized by dissolving in hot ethyl

-44-

acetate and diluting the solution with hexane. Chilling and filtering gives 7.1 g of crystals, m.p. 128°-132°C.

#### Reference Example 4

### 5, 6, 7, 8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3, 2-b]azepine

5

10

15

- (1) To a mixture of 4.54 g of lithium aluminum hydride in 400 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran under argon is added dropwise a solution of 10.0 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-5-one in 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 45°-50°C (exothermic reaction), and cooled to room temperature. The mixture is chilled in an ice bath (0°C) and 4.5 ml of water added dropwise over 1 hour, followed by the dropwise addition of 4.5 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide and the dropwise addition of 14 ml of water. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with tetrahydrofuran. The fil-trate is concentrated to give a solid. The solid is crystallized from hexane to give 5.5 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 66-68°C.
- 20 (2) To a mixture of 21.2 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-5-one in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran under argon, chilled to 0°C is added 25.2 ml of a 10.0 molar solution of borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The solution is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and is refluxed for 5 hours. 25 The mixture is cooled to room temperature and 85 ml of methanol added dropwise (exotherm). The solvent is removed and 100 ml of methanol is added (2 times) and after each addition the solvent is removed. To the 30 residual solid (dried under vacuum) is added 126 ml of 2N NaOH and the mixture refluxed 3 hours. The mixture is chilled (2 hours) and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and the solvent removed to give 15.4 g of brown solid, m.p. 55°-57°C. A sample (3 35 g) is sublimed to give 2.6 g of crystals, m.p. 64°-65°C.

-45-

#### Reference Example 5

## 4-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-5.6.7.8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3.2-b]azepine

To a solution of 10.71 g of 5,6,7,8-tetra-hydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 19.4 ml of triethylamine in 150 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added in small portions 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride (exothermic). The mixture is stirred for 3 hours at 25°C and then washed with water, sodium bicarbonate solution, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed, the residue dried under vacuum and recrystallized by dissolving in hot ethyl acetate and diluting with hexane. Chilling overnight and filtering gives 16 g of light brown crystals, m.p. 141°-142°C.

5

10

15

20

25

30

#### Reference Example 6

## 4-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-4.5.6.7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3.2-b]-azepin-8-one

To a solution of 9.0 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 713 ml of acetone is added 6.74 g of MgSO4 and 351 ml of water followed by 8.2 g of KMnO4 and heating at 70°C for 18 hours. Another 6.24 g of MgSO4 and 8.2 g of KMnO4 is added and heating continued at 70°C for 8 hours. An additional 6.24 g of MgSO4 and 8.2 g of KMnO4 is added and heating continued at 70°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the cake washed with acetone and 500 ml of methylene chloride. The combined filtrates are evaporated in vacuo to a residue which is washed with water and air dried to give 5.7 g of a solid. The solid is crystal-lized from ethyl acetate to give 5.1 g of off white solid, m.p. 184-186°C.

15

25

30

35

#### Reference Example 7

## 4-(4-Aminobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one

To a mixture of 2.0 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 40 ml of glacial acetic acid is added 20 ml of 6N-hydrochloric The mixture is cooled and 3.53 g of iron powder added in portions. The mixture is allowed to warm to room temperature and is heated at 70-80°C for 1 hour and then cooled to 0°C. To mixture is basified with 10N NaOH 10 (pH 14) and extracted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer is again extracted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate and the extracts combined. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml each of H2O and brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The extract is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate con-centrated to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetatehexane to give 1.24 g of crystals, m.p. 216-218°C.

#### Reference Example 8

#### 20 2-Chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5.6.7.8-tetrahydro-4Hthieno[3.2-blazepine

A solution of 6.04 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5, 6, 7, 8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3, 2-b]azepine in 40 ml of tetrahydrofuran is cooled to 0°C and 5.34 g of Nchlorosuccinimide added in portions. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. mixture is concentrated, diluted with 300 ml of dichloromethane and the mixture washed with 100 ml each of saturated K2CO3 solution, H2O, 1N HCl and brine. organic layer is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated and the residue chromatographed by HPLC on silica gel (2-columns) with a Waters-Prep-500 instrument and the solvent system ethyl acetate-dichloromethane (1:1) containing 2% diethylether. The middle cuts are combined and concentrated to give 0.135 g of 2,3-di-

-47-

chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepine, m.p. 140°-142°C. The latter cuts are combined, concentrated and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 2.8 g of crystals, 119°-120°C.

5

30

35

#### Reference Example 9

## 2-Chloro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5.6.7.8-tetrahydro-4Hthieno[3.2-blazepine

To a solution of 2.6 g of 2-chloro-4-(4-10 aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in a mixture of 52 ml of acetic acid and 26 ml of 6N HCl, cooled to 0°C, is added 4.32 g of iron powder in small portions. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 70°-80°C for 2 hours. The mixture is cooled in an ice 15 bath (0°C) and made basic with 10N NaOH (pH 14). mixture is extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate and then 150 ml of ethyl acetate. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml each of H2O and brine. The extract is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous 20 magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetatehexane to give 1.7 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 146°-149°C.

#### Reference Example 10

## 25 <u>2-Chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4.5.6.7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3.2-blazepin-8-one</u>

To a stirred solution of 0.336 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 36 ml of acetone-water (2:1) is added 0.21 g of anhydrous magnesium sulfate and 0.275 g of potassium permanganate. The mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. An additional 0.275 g of potassium permanganate and 0.21 g of magnesium sulfate is added and the mixture heated at 70°C for 6 hours. An additional 0.275 g of potassium permanganate and 0.21 g of magnesium sulfate is added and the mixture stirred and heated at 70°C for 24 hours. The

-48-

hot mixture is filtered and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is heated in a few ml of ethyl acetate, cooled and filtered to give 0.20 g of product as a solid. The reaction is repeated on 10 times the scale to give 1.3 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 165°-168°C.

## Reference Example 11 4-(4-Aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-

#### [3.2-blazepine

A solution of 9.97 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)
5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 110 ml of glacial acetic acid and 0.997 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon is hydrogenated in a Parr hydrogenator under 30-50 lb. of pressure for 4.5 hours. The mixture is filtered through a pad of diatomaceous earth and the filtrate concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The gummy residue (8.1 g) is purified by HPLC on a Waters-Prep-500 instrument with silica gel and ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent. Fractions containing product are combined and the solvent removed. The residue is crystallized to give 4.0 g of crystals, m.p. 168°-172°C.

#### Reference Example 12

## Methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-cyano-2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyllbenzoate

A 0.876 g sample of 60% sodium hydride in oil is washed with hexane followed by the addition of 60 ml of dry N,N-dimethylformamide. The reaction mixture is stirred for 1 hour under argon at room temperature after the addition of 4.73 g of α-(2-chlorophenyl)-4-morpholineacetonitrile. To the reaction mixture is added 4.58 g of methyl 4-(bromomethyl)benzoate and stirring continued for 3 hours. Several drops of acetic acid is added to ice water and the reaction quenched. The pH is 3-4 and saturated NaHCO3 added to adjust the pH to 6-7. Upon cooling a solid forms which is filtered, washed with water and dried to give 5.92 g of yellow solid. Crystallization from methylene chloride-hexane gives 2.10

5

10

g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p.  $116-118^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

#### Reference Example 13

## Methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoate

A mixture of 1.0 g of methyl [4-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-cyano-2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]benzoate and 14 ml of acetic acid and 6 ml of water is heated at reflux for 20 minutes then poured over crushed ice. After stirring for 15 minutes, the resulting solid is collect-ed, washed with water and air dried to give 0.63 g of tan solid, m.p. 40-42°C.

#### Reference Example 14

### 4-[2-(2-Chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoic acid

A mixture of 18.78 g of methyl 4-[2-(215 chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoate in 288.8 ml of CH3OH,
72.2 ml of water and 5.2 g of NaOH is refluxed for 3
hours then acidified with 2 N citric acid. The reaction
mixture is evaporated in vacuo to remove the CH3OH. The
aqueous phase is extracted with CH2Cl2 and acidified with
20 1 N HCl. The resulting solid is collected and dried
under vacuum to give 17.27 g of the desired product, m.p.
168-172°C.

#### Reference Example 15

### Methyl 4.5.6.7-tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylate

To a solution of 2.11 g of 4-oxo-4,5,6,7tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carboxylic acid in 100 ml of
methanol is added 202 mg of p-toluenesulfonic acid
hydrate and the mixture heated at reflux for 24 hours.
The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and
the methanol concentrated in vacuo to a residue. The
residue is dissolved in 100 ml of ethyl acetate and
washed with 30 ml of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 30
ml of brine. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>,
filtered and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo to a
residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane
to give 1.75 g of the desired product as a white

-50-

crystalline solid, m.p. 100-102°C.

#### Reference Example 16

## Methyl 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-oxo-4H-furo[3,2-blazepine-3-carboxvlate

To a mixture of 1.0 g of methyl 4,5,6,7tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylate and 502 mg of
sodium azide in 5 ml of chloroform is added dropwise at
32-36°C under argon 1.4 ml of sulfuric acid. The
reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 24
hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with 14 ml of
water and rendered alkaline with NH4OH and extracted with
chloroform. The separated organic layer is washed with
water, brine and dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated in
vacuo to give 1.0 g of the desired product as a white
solid.

#### Reference Example 17

## (E) 4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-[[[(4-methylphenyl)-sulfonylloxyliminol-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid

To a partial solution of 2.8 g of (E)-4,5,6,7
20 tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)-3-benzofurancar-boxylic acid
in 7 ml of pyridine is added portionwise at 0°C, 3.01 g
of p-toluene sulfonyl chloride under argon. The mixture
is stirred for 1 hour then diluted with 40 ml of cold 1 N
HCl, filtered, washed with water and dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>.

25 The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 4.78 g of
the desired product as an off-white solid, m.p. 155-

#### Reference Example 18

## 5.6.7.8-Tetrahydro-5-oxo-4H-furo[3.2-b]azepine-3-

30 <u>carboxylic acid</u>

165°C.

35

A mixture of 1.0 g of (E)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-[[[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]oxy]imino]-3-benzofuran-carboxylic acid, 5.9 g of potassium acetate, 23 ml of ethanol and 39 ml of water is heated at reflux for 48 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo, 80 ml of methylene chloride added and the separated organic

-51-

layer washed with water, brine and dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The organic layer is concen-trated in vacuo to a solid which is purified by chroma-tography on a preparative silica gel plate by elution with 0.5% acetic acid in ethyl acetate. The eluted band is washed with 1% acetic acid in ethyl acetate. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated in vacuo to give 200 mg of off-white solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 165 mg of the desired product as a white solid.

#### Reference Example 19

10

## (E) and (Z)-4.5.6.7-Tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)-3benzofurancarboxylic acid

To a solution of 30.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid in 225 ml of ethanol is added 22.97 g of hydroxylamine hydrochloride, followed by 18.10 g of sodium acetate and 55 ml of water. The reaction mixture is heated at reflux for 2.5 hours and concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is diluted with 600 ml of ethyl acetate, washed with 2 x 200 ml of water, brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dried under vacuum to give 31.0 g of the desired product as a solid.

#### Reference Example 20

## 25 (E) and (Z)=6.7-Dihydro-4-(5H)benzofuranone. O-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonylloxime

To a partial solution of 28.0 g of (E) and (Z)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)benzofuran in 54 ml of pyridine is added portionwise at 0°C, 38.8 g of p-toluene sulfonyl chloride under argon. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour then diluted with 600 ml of ethyl acetate and 400 ml of cold 2 N HCl. The organic layer is washed with 200 ml of water and 200 ml of brine, and dried with Na2SO4. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 50 g of the desired product as a solid. Crystallization from ethyl alcohol by allowing to stand at room

-52-

temperature gives 19.9 g of off-white needles, m.p. 123-125°C. The filtrate is allowed to stand and the crystals collected and dried to give 10.0 g of the desired product as an off-white solid, 83-85°C.

#### Reference Example 21

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

## 4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4Hthieno[3,2-blazepine

To a solution of 15.0 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 150 ml of dichloromethane cooled to 0°C is added 27.2 ml of triethylamine. After stirring 5 minutes, a solution of 28.0 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 140 ml of dichloromethane is added slowly. The solution is stirred at room temperature overnight, diluted with 450 ml of dichloromethane and the solution washed with 200 ml each of water, 2N citric acid, 1 M sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer is dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered through a thin pad of hydrated magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 24.3 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 131-134°C.

#### Reference Example 22

## 4-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4Hthieno[3,2-blazepine

A mixture of 5.0 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitro-benzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 16.8 g of stannous chloride dihydrate in 184 ml of ethanol is heated at 80°C under argon for 1 hour. The solution is cooled in an ice bath and made basic by the slow careful addition of 1 M NaHCO3 (ca. 380 ml). The mixture is stirred for 1 hour at room temperature and extracted with 400 ml of ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer is extracted with an additional 250 ml of ethyl acetate. The extracts are combined and washed with 300 ml of brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated under

WO 96/22294

-53-

PCT/US96/01096

vacuum to give a white solid which is recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give 4.23 g of off-white crystals, m.p.  $176-179^{\circ}C$ .

5

#### Reference Example 23

## 4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4.5.6.7-tetrahydro-8Hthieno[3.2-blazepine-8-one

To a solution of 2.02 g of 4-(2-chloro-4nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-10 azepine in 144 ml of acetone is added 1.56 g of magnesium sulfate, 72 ml of water and 1.89 g of potassium permanganate. The mixture is stirred and heated at 70-75°C for 4 hours. An additional amount of magnesium sulfate (1.56 g) and potassium permanganate (1.89 g) is added and the mixture stirred and heated at  $75^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 16 15 hours. Magnesium sulfate (1.56 g) and potassium permanganate (1.89 g) are added and the mixture stirred and heated at 75°C for 5 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with acetone and dichloromethane. The filtrate is 20 concentrated and the residue (1.4 g) is heated with ethyl acetate, the mixture (with insoluble solid) cooled and filtered to give 1.0 g of product as a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals, m.p. 180°-185°C. 25

#### Reference Example 24

## 4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8-hydroxy-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-blazepine

To a solution of 1.0 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-30 nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 1 ml of ethanol and the mixture cooled to 0°C. To the mixture is added 0.129 g of sodium borohydride in portions and the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the mix-ture is added slowly 4.2 ml of saturated ammonium chloride solution at 0°C. After stirring at room temperature for

-54-

10 minutes, the solvent is removed under vacuum and 80 ml of ethyl acetate added to the residue. The mixture is washed with 20 ml each of H<sub>2</sub>O, 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give the product as a white glass.

#### Reference Example 25

## 4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno-

10 <u>[3.2-blazepine</u>

15

20

25

30

35

A solution of 0.90 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8-hydroxy-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 5 ml of dichloromethane cooled to -10°C is added under argon 533 µl of triethylamine and dropwise 296 µl of methanesulfonyl chloride. After one hour the cooling bath is removed and the mixture allowed to stand at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 10 ml of dichloromethane and 5 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give an oil which is crystallized by adding hexane. Filtration gives light yellow crystals (0.80 g).

#### Reference Example 26

5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride

A mixture of 8.0 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoic acid and 52 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and two times 50 ml of toluene is added and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 8.5 g of product as a gum.

#### Reference Example 27

#### 2-Chloro-5-(methylthio)benzovl chloride

A mixture of 2.03 g of 2-chloro-5-(methyl-thio)benzoic acid and 10 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and 20 ml of toluene added and removed under

-55-

vacuum (2 times) to give 2.2 g of brown needles.

#### Reference Example 28

#### 2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzovl chloride

As described for Reference Example 26, 25 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoic acid is reacted with thionyl chloride (124 ml) to give the product (27.0 g) as a brown oil.

#### Reference Example 29

#### 2-Chloro-5-nitrobenzoyl chloride

As described for Reference Example 26, 5.0 g of 2-chloro-5-nitrobenzoic acid is reacted with 50 ml of thionyl chloride to give 5.6 g of the product as an off-white solid.

#### Reference Example 30

#### 15 <u>2.3-Dimethylbenzovl chloride</u>

As described for Reference Example 26, 3.0 g of 2,3-dimethylbenzoic acid is reacted with 40 ml of thionyl chloride to give 3.2 g of the product as a colorless oil.

#### Reference Example 31

#### 20 <u>2-Chlorobenzovl chloride</u>

25

As described for Reference Example 26, 3.13 g of 2-chlorobenzoic acid is reacted with 40 ml of thionyl chloride to give 3.32 of product as an off-white semi solid.

#### Reference Example 32

### 4-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-blazepine

To a solution of 2.36 g of SnCl<sub>2</sub>.2H<sub>2</sub>O in 13 ml of ethanol is added 0.70 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitro30 benzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine. The mixture is heated at 75°C for one hour, cooled to room temperature and concentrated under vacuum to 10 ml. The mixture is chilled in an ice bath and 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> added slowly. The mixture is extracted with 100 ml ethyl acetate and then with 80 ml of ethyl acetate. The extracts are combined, washed with brine and dried

-56-

(Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The extract is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate is concentrated to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give white crystals, m.p. 192°-200°C.

5

#### Reference Example 33

#### 4-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

A mixture of 43.42 g (0.26 mol) of ethyl 4aminobenzoate and 40.8 g (0.26 mol) of 2-methylbenzoyl

10 chloride in 150 ml of dichloromethane is cooled in an ice
bath and 26.56 g (0.26 mol) of triethylamine is added
dropwise. After the addition, the solution is stirred at
room temperature overnight. The mixture is poured into
water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer

15 is washed with water, 1 N HCl, 1 M NaHCO3 and dried
(Na2SO4). The solvent is removed and the solid slurried
with ethyl acetate and filtered to give 57 g of ethyl 4[(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoate as crystals, m.p. 110115°C.

A mixture of 50.7 g (0.20 mol) of the preceding compound, 280 ml of ethanol and 55 ml of 10 N NaOH is refluxed for 5 minutes. The mixture is cooled to room temperature, diluted with 200 ml of water and acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid (pH 1-2). The mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water and dried to give 51 g of product as white crystals, m.p. 270-275°C.

#### Reference Example 34

#### 4-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoyl chloride

A mixture of 10.3 g of 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)-amino]benzoic acid and 32 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solution is concentrated under vacuum. Toluene is added and the solvent removed under vacuum. Toluene is added and the mixture chilled and filtered to give a yellow solid, m.p. 135-141°C.

-57-

#### Reference Example 35

#### 4-[(2.6-Dimethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

A mixture of 2 g (10 mmol) of 2,6-dimethoxy-benzoyl chloride, 1.65 g (10 mmol) of ethyl 4-aminobenz-oate, 1.11 g of triethylamine and 61 mg of 4-dimethyl-aminopyridine in 10 ml of dichloromethane is refluxed for 20 hours. The mixture is diluted with water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with water, 1 N HCl, 1 N Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 1.22 g of ethyl 4-[(2,6-dimethoxybenzoyl)amino]benzoate as crystals, m.p. 183-185°C.

10

25

30

35

A mixture of 3.88 g (11.79 mmol) of the preceding compound, 17.3 ml of 2 N NaOH and 20 ml of
methanol is stirred at room temperature overnight.
Methanol (30 ml) and water (10 ml) are added and the
solution refluxed for 1/2 hour. The solvents are
removed under vacuum and the residual solid triturated
with ether and the ether decanted. The solid is
dissolved in 30 ml of water and acidified with 2 N HCl
(pH 3). The mixture is filtered, the solid washed with
water and dried at 60°C under vacuum to give 3.0 g of
solid, m.p. 236-240°C.

#### Reference Example 36

#### 4-[(4-Pyridinylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

To a cooled mixture of 1.78 g (0.01 mol) of isoniconinoyl chloride hydrochloride in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.52 g (0.025 mol) of triethylamine. To the solution is added a solution of 1.65 g of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate in 5 ml of dichloromethane. After stirring at room temperature overnight, 50 mg of 4-dimethylaminopyridine is added and the mixture is refluxed for 24 hours. The mixture is poured into water and filtered to give 3.4 g of brown solid. A 0.50 g sample is triturated with ethyl acetate to give 0.37 g of ethyl

-58-

4-[(4-pyridinylcarbonyl)amino]benzoate as yellow crystals, m.p. 143-145°C.

5

10

15

#### Reference Example 37

### 2-Methylfurane-3-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 4.0 g of methyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxylate, 30 ml of 2 N NaOH and 15 ml methanol is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum to give a solid. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane (discarded). The solid is dissolved in water and the solution acidified with 2 N citric acid to give a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals 1.05 g of crystals of 2-methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid. The preceding compound (0.95 g) and 3 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent is removed, toluene added (20 ml, three times) and the solvent removed to give the product as an oil.

#### Reference Example 38

### 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

A sample of 1.51 g of sodium hydride (60% in oil) is washed with hexane under argon to remove the oil. 20 To the washed sodium hydride is added 5 ml of N, Ndimethylformamide. To this mixture is added dropwise a solution of 8.69 g of ethyl 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoate in 20 ml of dimethylformamide. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 0.5 hour and then 5.23 g 25 of methyl iodide is added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is diluted with water and extracted with dichloromethane. extract is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated to reduce the 30 volume and the solution filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 11 g of an oil (1:1 mixture of product and N, N-dimethylformamide). The preceding product, ethyl 4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-35 benzoate, (11 g) is dissolved in 30 ml of methanol and 25 ml of 2 N NaOH added. The mixture is refluxed for 2

-59-

hours and the solvent removed. The residue is extracted with ether (discard) and the remaining residue dissolved in 50 ml of water. The basic solution is acidified with 2 N citric acid and the solid filtered off and washed with water. The product is air dried to give 6.72 g of crystals, m.p. 187-190°C.

#### Reference Example 39

### 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoylaminolbenzoyl chloride

A solution of 6.72 g of 4-{N-methyl-N-(2-10 methylbenzoyl)amino}benzoic acid in 20 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for one hour. The volatiles are removed in vacuo. Toluene is added to the residue and then the toluene removed in vacuo (repeated several times) to give the 7.3 g of product as a brown oil.

15

20

As described for Reference Example 38, but substituting the appropriate ethyl 4-[(N-aroyl)amino]-benzoate, the following compounds are prepared.

#### Reference Example 40

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid Reference Example 41

N-[N-Methyl-N-(2,5-dichlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid Reference Example 42

N-[N-Methyl-N-(2.4-dichlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid Reference Example 43

25 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chloro-4-methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

#### Reference Example 44

4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

30 Reference Example 45
4-[N-Methy]-N-(2 4-dimethylbenzoyl)aminolbe

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2.4-dimethylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid Reference Example 46

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2,3-dimethylbenzoyl)amino]benzoic acid Reference Example 47

35 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

-60-

|    | Reference Example 48   |
|----|--|
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)amino benzoic             |
|    | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 49   |
| 5  | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dimethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid             |
|    | Reference Example 50   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxy-4-chlorobenzoyl)amino]benzoic             |
|    | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 51   |
| 10 | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylthiobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid              |
|    | Reference Example 52   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylthiophen-3-                                 |
|    | ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid                                      |
|    | Reference Example 53   |
| 15 | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-methylthiophene-2-                                |
|    | ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid                                      |
|    | Reference Example 54   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylfuran-3-ylcarbonyl)amino]benzoic            |
|    | acid   |
| 20 | Reference Example 55   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-methylfuran-2-ylcarbonyl]amino]benzoic            |
|    | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 56   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(phenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid                     |
| 25 | Reference Example 57   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chlorophenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid             |
|    | Reference Example 58   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxyphenylacetyl)amino]benzoic acid            |
|    | Reference Example 59   |
| 30 | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylphenylacetyl)amino benzoic acid             |
|    | Reference Example 60   |
|    | 4-[N-Methyl-N-(cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid               |
|    | Reference Example 61   |
|    | A = (N - Mothy) - N = (3 - cycloheyenecarbony) = minolhenecia acid |

-61-

#### Reference Example 62

### 4-[N-Methyl-N-(cyclohexylacetyl)amino]benzoic acid Reference Example 63

## 4.5.6.7-Tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one, 8-oxime

5

10

20

25

To a suspension of 2.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetra-hydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 7 ml of ethanol is added 0.681 g of hydroxylamine, hydrochloride; 0.400 g of sodium acetate and 2 ml of water. The mixture is refluxed for 2 hours, chilled, filtered and the solid washed with water. The solid is dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 2.0 g of yellow solid.

#### Reference Example 64

## 4.5.6.7-Tetrahydro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-blazepin-8-one, 8-oxime

A mixture of 1.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one, 8-oxime, 6.8 g of SnCl2•2H2O and 14 ml of ethanol is refluxed for 2 hours. The mixture is chilled (ice bath) and 1 M NaHCO3 is added until the pH is approximately 8. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with brine, dried (Na2SO4) and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is chromatographed on prep-plates of silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (2:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 0.37 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 156-160°C.

#### Reference Example 65

## 30 <u>8-Amino-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine</u>

The procedure from <u>Synthetic Communications</u> 18(8) 777-782(1988) is followed.

To a mixture of 0.50 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4-35 (4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one, 8-oxime,

-62~

0.50 g of ammonium acetate and 0.283 g of sodium cyanoborohydride in 25 ml of methanol is added dropwise 2.54 ml of titanium trichloride (20% aqueous solution) while stirring. The mixture is worked-up and the process repeated several times to give the product as a solid.

#### Reference Example 66

# N-[4-[(5.6.7.8-Tetrahydro-8-[[(2-methylbenzoyl)-oxyliminol-4H-thieno[3.2-blazepin-4-yl)carbonyllphenyll-2-methylbenzamide

To a cooled (0°C) solution of 0.18 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepine-8-one, 8-oxime and 261 µl of triethylamine in 4 ml of dichloromethane is added 204 µl of 2-methylbenzoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred under argon for 16 hours and diluted with 40 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is washed with 20 ml each of H2O, 2 N citric acid, brine and dried (Na2SO4). The solvent is removed and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give 0.22 g of white

#### Reference Example 67

## N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyllphenyll-2-methylbenzamide, 8-oxime

To a stirred solution of Reference Example 66
25 (0.20 g) in 4 ml of methanol is added 0.93 ml of 1 N
NaOH. The mixture is stirred overnight and concentrated
under vacuum. The residue is partitioned between water
and ethyl acetate. The organic layer is washed with
brine and concentrated under vacuum. Chilling gives the
30 product as crystals (0.10 g).

#### Reference Example 68

#### 5-(2-Pyridinyl)thiophene-2-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 1.0 g of 5-(2-pyridinyl)thiophene-2-carboxylic acid and 5 ml of thionyl chloride is 35 refluxed for 2.5 hours. The mixture is concentrated to dryness under vacuum. Toluene is added (2 times) and the

-63-

solvent removed under vacuum to give the product as an off-white solid.

5

10

15

#### Reference Example 69

### 6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 5.0 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 12.6 ml of diiso-propylethylamine in 50 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added a solution of 9.7 ml of cyclohexylcarbonyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 60 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 60 ml of brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to give 12.8 g of a solid.

The above solid (12.0 g) in a mixture of 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) is chilled (0°C) and 62 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, neutralized with 10 ml of glacial acetic acid and concentrated under vacuum. The mixture (containing solid) is acidified to pH 1 with 1 N HCl and extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate and twice with 100 ml of ethyl acetate. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml of brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to a white solid. Trituration with hexane gives 6.5 g of product as a white solid.

#### Reference Example 70

#### Methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

Dry methanol (400 ml) is cooled in an ice bath and HCl gas is bubbled into the mixture for 25 minutes. To the MeOH-HCl is added 30 g of 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid and then the mixture is stirred and heated at 90°C for 2 hours (all the solid dissolved). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residual solid dissolved in 100 ml of water. The acidic solution is neutralized with saturated sodium bicarbonate (solid

-64-

separated) and the mixture chilled and filtered to give 30 g of white crystals, m.p.  $150^{\circ}-154^{\circ}C$ .

#### Reference Example 71

## 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic

5 aci

To a mixture of 4.5 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.53 ml of triethylamine in 40
ml of dichloromethane (cooled in an ice bath) is added
6.38 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of
dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room
temperature under argon for 18 hours and an additional
3.4 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride added. After
stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the mixture is
filtered to give 3.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(5-fluoro-2methylbenzoyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate. The
filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue
triturated with hexane and ethyl acetate to give an
additional 9.0 g of bis acylated compound.

A mixture of 12.0 g of methyl 6-[[bis(5-fluoro20 2-methylbenzoyl)]amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, 60 ml of
methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH is
stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is
concentrated under vacuum, diluted with 25 ml of water,
cooled and acidified with 1 N HCl. The mix-ture is
25 filtered and the solid washed with water to give 6.3 g of
the product as a white solid.

As described for Reference Example 71, but substituting the appropriate aroyl chloride, heteroaroyl chloride, cycloalkanoyl chlorides, phenylacetylchlorides and related appropriate acid chlorides, the following 6-[(aroylamino)pyridine-3-carboxylic acids, 6-[(heteroaroyl)amino)pyridine-3-carboxylic acids and related 6-[(acylated)amino)pyridine-3-carboxylic acids are prepared.

30

WO 96/22294

-65-

|    | Reference Example 72  |
|----|---|
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-                              |
|    | carboxylic acid   |
|    | Reference Example 73  |
| 5  | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-                              |
|    | carboxylic acid   |
|    | Reference Example 74  |
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)amino]pyridine-3-                              |
|    | <u>carboxylic acid</u>  |
| 10 | Reference Example 75  |
|    | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-                              |
|    | carboxylic acid   |
|    | Reference Example 76  |
|    | 6-[(3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic                      |
| 15 | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 77  |
|    | 6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid                          |
|    | Reference Example 78  |
| 20 | 6-[(2-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid                          |
| 20 | Reference Example 79  |
|    | 6-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid                          |
|    | Reference Example 80 6-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
|    | acid  |
| 25 | Reference Example 81  |
|    | 6-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid                      |
|    | Reference Example 82  |
|    | 6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic                      |
|    | acid  |
| 30 | Reference Example 83  |
|    | 6-1(3.4.5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic                       |
|    | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 84  |
|    | 6-[(2.4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid                      |
| 35 | Reference Example 85  |
|    | 6-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid                           |

-66-

|    | Reference Example 86                                     |
|----|--|
|    | 6-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic  |
|    | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 87                                     |
| 5  | 6-[(Tetrahydrofuranyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-       |
|    | carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 88                                     |
|    | 6-[(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-       |
|    | <u>carboxylic acid</u>                                   |
| 10 | Reference Example 89                                     |
|    | 6-1(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 90                                     |
|    | 6-[(cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic   |
|    | acid   |
| 15 | Reference Example 91                                     |
|    | 6-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-     |
|    | <u>carboxylic acid</u>                                   |
|    | Reference Example 92                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic    |
| 20 | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 93                                     |
|    | 6-[(cyclopentylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid |
|    | Reference Example 94                                     |
|    | 6-[(cyclohexylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid    |
| 25 | Reference Example 95                                     |
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
|    | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 96                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
| 30 | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 97                                     |
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
|    | acid   |
|    | Reference Example 98                                     |
| 35 | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
|    | acid   |

-67-

|    | Relefence Example 99                                      |
|----|---|
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-  |
|    | carboxylic acid   |
|    | Reference Example 100                                     |
| 5  | 6-1(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-  |
|    | carboxylic acid   |
|    | Reference Example 101                                     |
|    | 6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 102                                     |
| 10 | 6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 103                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic  |
|    | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 104                                     |
| 15 | 6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 105                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid     |
|    | Reference Example 106                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
| 20 | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 107                                     |
|    | 6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic |
|    | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 108                                     |
| 25 | 6-[[2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-          |
|    | <u>carboxylic acid</u>                                    |
|    | Reference Example 109                                     |
|    | 6-1(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 110                                     |
| 30 | 6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 111                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 112                                     |
|    | 6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3- |
| 35 | carboxylic acid   |

-68-

|    | Defended During 1 442                                     |
|----|---|
|    | Reference Example 113                                     |
|    | 6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid  |
|    | Reference Example 114                                     |
| _  | 6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic  |
| 5  | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 115                                     |
|    | 6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic    |
|    | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 116                                     |
| 10 | 6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic  |
|    | acid  |
|    | Reference Example 117                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3- |
|    | <u>carboxylic acid</u>                                    |
| 15 | Reference Example 118                                     |
|    | 6-1(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | A mixture of 6.2 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methyl-              |
|    | benzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 23 ml of     |
| 20 | thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. An additional    |
|    | 12 ml of thionyl chloride is added and the mixture        |
|    | refluxed for 0.5 hour. The mixture is concentrated to     |
|    | dryness under vacuum and 30 ml of toluene added to the    |
|    | residue. The toluene is removed under vacuum and the      |
| 25 | process (add toluene and remove) is repeated to give 7.7  |
|    | g of crude product as a solid.                            |
|    | As described for Reference Example 118, the               |
|    | following 6-(acyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chlorides are |
|    | prepared.   |
| 30 | Reference Example 119                                     |
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  |

<u>chloride</u>

35

-69-

|    | Reference Example 121                                    |
|----|--|
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl |
|    | <u>chloride</u>  |
|    | Reference Example 122                                    |
| 5  | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl |
|    | chloride   |
|    | Reference Example 123                                    |
|    | 6-[(3-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl   |
|    | chloride   |
| 10 | Reference Example 124                                    |
|    | 6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride   |
|    | Reference Example 125                                    |
|    | 6-[(2-Chlorobenzoyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride.  |
|    | white crystals   |
| 15 | Reference Example 126                                    |
|    | 6-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride   |
|    | Reference Example 127                                    |
|    | 6-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)amino pyridine-3-carbonyl   |
|    | <u>chloride</u>  |
| 20 | Reference Example 128                                    |
|    | 6-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl        |
|    | <u>chloride</u>  |
|    | Reference Example 129                                    |
|    | 6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl   |
| 25 | <u>chloride</u>  |
|    | Reference Example 130                                    |
|    | 6-[(3.4.5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | <u>chloride</u>  |
|    | Reference Example 131                                    |
| 30 | 6-1(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl        |
|    | <u>chloride</u>  |
|    | Reference Example 132                                    |
|    | 6-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride    |
|    | Reference Example 133                                    |
| 35 | 6-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | <u>chloride</u>  |

-70-

|    | Reference Example 134                                     |
|----|---|
|    | 6-[(Tetrahydrofuranyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-        |
|    | carbonyl chloride   |
|    | Reference Example 135                                     |
| 5  | 6-1(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-        |
|    | carbonyl chloride   |
|    | Reference Example 136                                     |
|    | 6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride |
|    | Reference Example 137                                     |
| 10 | 6-[(Cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl      |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | Reference Example 138                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl       |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
| 15 | Reference Example 139                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl       |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | Reference Example 140                                     |
|    | 6-[(Cyclopentylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl         |
| 20 | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | Reference Example 141                                     |
|    | 6-[(Cyclohexylacetyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride   |
|    | Reference Example 142                                     |
|    | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl    |
| 25 | chloride  |
|    | Reference Example 143                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | chloride  |
|    | Reference Example 144                                     |
| 30 | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | chloride  |
|    | Reference Example 145                                     |
|    | 6-1(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | chloride  |

|            | Reference Example 146                                    |
|------------|--|
|            | 6-[(2-Methyl-5-fluorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-     |
|            | carbonyl chloride  |
|            | Reference Example 147                                    |
| 5          | 6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3- |
|            | carbonyl chloride  |
|            | Reference Example 148                                    |
|            | 6-[(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3- |
|            | carbonyl chloride  |
| 10         | Reference Example 149                                    |
|            | 6-[(2.5-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl        |
|            | chloride   |
|            | Reference Example 150                                    |
|            | 6-[(3.5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl        |
| 15         | chloride   |
|            | Reference Example 151                                    |
|            | 6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl   |
|            | <u>chloride</u>  |
|            | Reference Example 152                                    |
| 20         | 6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl        |
|            | chloride   |
|            | Reference Example 153                                    |
|            | 6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride  |
| <b>.</b> - | Reference Example 154                                    |
| 25         | 6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  |
|            | <u>chloride</u>  |
|            | Reference Example 155                                    |
|            | 6-1(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  |
| 20         | chloride   |
| 30         | Reference Example 156                                    |
|            | 6-[[2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzovl]amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl |
|            | chloride   |
|            | Reference Example 157                                    |
| ) E        | 6-[(2.6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl        |
| 35         | chloride   |

-72-

|    | Reference Example 158                                     |
|----|---|
|    | 6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl         |
|    | chloride  |
|    | Reference Example 159                                     |
| 5  | 6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl         |
|    | chloride  |
|    | Reference Example 160                                     |
|    | 6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3- |
|    | carbonyl chloride   |
| 10 | Reference Example 161                                     |
|    | 6-1(2.3-Dichlorobenzoyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl         |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | Reference Example 162                                     |
|    | 6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl    |
| 15 | chloride  |
|    | Reference Example 163                                     |
|    | 6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl      |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | Reference Example 164                                     |
| 20 | 6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl    |
|    | <u>chloride</u>   |
|    | Reference Example 165                                     |
|    | 6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3- |
|    | carbonyl chloride   |
| 25 | As described for Reference Example 71, the                |
|    | following bis acylated products (Table A) are prepared    |
|    | and purified by silica gel chromatography. These          |
|    | compounds are then hydrolysed to the acids as described   |

in Example 71 (Table B).

Table A

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3O \\ \hline \\ N \\ \hline \\ R_1 \\ \hline \\ R_2 \\ \hline \\ R_4 \\ \hline \\ R_3 \\ \hline \\ R_4 \\ \end{array}$$

| Ref. | R <sub>1</sub> | R <sub>2</sub> | R3   | R4    | x  | и÷  |
|------|----------------|----------------|------|-------|----|-----|
| 166  | СНЗ            | н              | н    | н     | н  | 388 |
| 167  | СНЗ            | Н              | Н    | F     | н  | 424 |
| 168  | СНЗ            | F              | Н    | Н     | Н  | 426 |
| 169  | Н              | осн3           | осн3 | осн з | Н  | 540 |
| 170  | Cl             | Н              | Н    | Н     | Н  | 430 |
| 171  | F              | н              | F    | Н     | н  | 396 |
| 172  | Br             | Н              | Н    | н     | Н  | 520 |
| 173  | Cl             | Н              | F    | Н     | Н  | 412 |
| 174  | Ph             | Н              | н    | Н     | Н  | 512 |
| 175  | C1             | Н              | Н    | Br    | Н  | 474 |
| 176  | СНЗ            | Н              | Н    | F     | Br |     |
| 177  | СНЗ            | н              | н    | Н     | Br | 468 |

<sup>5</sup>  $M^+$  is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum

5

Table B

HO 
$$R_1$$
 $R_2$ 
 $R_3$ 

| Ref. | R1  | R2   | R3   | R4   | X  | N+  |
|------|-----|------|------|------|----|-----|
| 178  | СНЗ | н    | н    | н    | н  | 256 |
| 179  | СНЗ | Н    | Н    | F    | Н  | 274 |
| 180  | CH3 | F    | Н    | Н    | Н  | 274 |
| 181  | Н   | оснз | осн3 | оснз | Н  | 332 |
| 182  | Cl  | Н    | Н    | Н    | Н  | 276 |
| 183  | F   | Н    | F    | Н    | Н  | 278 |
| 184  | Br  | Н    | Н    | Н    | Н  | 322 |
| 185  | Cl  | H    | F    | Н    | Н  | 294 |
| 186  | Ph  | Н    | Н    | н    | Н  | 318 |
| 187  | Cl  | Н    | Н    | Br   | Н  | 356 |
| 188  | СНЗ | Н    | Н    | F    | Cl |     |
| 189  | СНЗ | Н    | Н    | Н    | Br | 336 |

 ${\tt M}^{+}$  is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum.

#### Reference Example 190

#### 6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a stirred solution of 6-aminonicotinic acid (13.8 g, 0.1 mole) in glacial acetic acid (100 ml), bromine (16 g, 5 ml, 0.1 mole) in acetic acid (20 ml) is added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred for 8 hours at room temperature and the acetic acid is removed under reduced pressure. The yellow solid residue is dissolved in water and carefully neutralized with 30%

-75-

NH4OH. The separated solid is filtered and washed with water to give 18 g of solid; mass spectrum:  $218 \, (M^+)$ .

#### Reference Example 191

#### Methyl 6-amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylate

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid (10 g, 50 mmol) is dissolved in saturated methanolic HCl (100 ml) and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent, methanol, is re-moved under reduced pressure and the residue is dissolved in ice cold water. The aqueous solution is neutralized with 0.1 N NaOH and the solid which separates is filtered; washed well with water and air dried to yield 10 g of product as a solid: mass spectrum 231 (M<sup>+</sup>).

#### Reference Example 192

#### 6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic

15 acid

5

10

20

25

30

35

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 5.0 g methyl 6aminopyridine-3-carboxylate, 12.6 ml of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 12.2 g of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 50 ml each of 1 M NaHCO3, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate con-centrated to dryness. The residue (9.0 g) is chroma-tographed on a silica gel column with hexane-ethyl acetate (3:1) as eluent to give 8.6 g of solid. This solid, mainly methyl 6-[[bis(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)]-amino]pyridine-3carboxylate, is dissolved in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuranmethanol (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH added to the solution. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and the mixture concentrated under vacuum. Water (25 ml) is added and the mixture is stirred and

acidified with cold 1 N HCl. The mixture is chilled and

-76-

the solid filtered and washed with water to give 5.9 g of off-white solid.

#### Reference Example 193

# 6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

5

10

A mixture of 4.5 g of 6-[(2-methylbenzene-acetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 25 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness under vacuum. To the residue is added 20 ml of toluene and the solvent removed under vacuum. The addition and removal of toluene is repeated and the residual solid dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 5.3 g of dark brown solid.

#### Reference Example 194

15

20

25

30

#### 2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoic acid

A mixture of methyl 2-iodobenzoate (12 g, 47 mmol), 2-pyridinyl-tri-n-butyl stannous (20 g, 55 mmol) and tetrakis (triphenyl phosphine) palladium (O) (2 g), is refluxed in toluene (degassed) for 48 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated under vacuum and the residue is chromatographed on a column of silica gel with 50% ethylacetate:hexane as eluent. The initial fractions (2 lits) are discarded and finally the product methyl 2-(2-pyridinyl)benzoate, is eluted and isolated as an oil. (Yield: 5.5 g): mass spectrum, 213 (M<sup>+</sup>)

A mixture of the preceding compound (3.0 g, 14 mmol) and NaOH (600 mg, 15 mmol) is refluxed in MeOH:water (9:1) (50 ml) for 4 hours. When the reaction is complete, it is concentrated under vacuum and the residue dissolved in 50 ml of cold water. Neutralization with glacial acetic acid affords a solid which is filtered off and washed with water to give 2.5 g of brown solid; slightly soluble in water; mass spectrum (CI) 200 (M+1).

-77-

#### Example 1

# N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dichlorobenzamide

To a solution of 0.30 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 0.208 ml
of triethylamine in 10 ml of dichloromethane is added,
under argon, 0.251 g of 3,4-dichlorobenzoyl chloride.
The mixture is stirred overnight and concentrated to
dryness under vacuum. The residue is dissolved in ethyl
acetate and the solution washed with H2O, 2N citric acid,
NaHCO3 solution, brine and dried (Na2SO4). The solvent
is removed and the residual yellow solid crystallized
from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 0.254 g of crystals,
m.p. 154°-160°C.

15

20

25

30

#### Example 2

# N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-blazepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide

A solution of 0.307 g of 2-chlorophenylacetic acid in 3 ml of thionyl chloride is stirred 2 hours at room temperature. The excess thionyl chloride is removed under vacuum and 5 ml of toluene added and removed (under vacuum) three times. The residue is dissolved in 5 ml of dichloromethane and 0.3 ml of triethylamine. To the solution is added (under argon) 0.49 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and the mixture stirred overnight. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and the residue dissolved in ethyl acetate. The solution is washed with 1N HCl, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residual solid is crystal-lized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 0.36 g of tan crystals, m.p. 178°-180°C.

-78-

#### Example 3

# N-[4-[(5.6.7.8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3.2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyllphenyll-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, 4-(4-aminoben-zoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine (0.001 ml) is reacted with 2-methylbenzoyl chloride in dichloromethane to give the product. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives crystals, m.p. 181°-182°C.

The following compounds are prepared as 10 described in Example 1.

|    | Ex. No. |   |
|----|---------|---|
| 15 | 4       | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]2-furanecarboxamide, beige solid.                      |
| 20 | 5       | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]4-tert-butylbenzamide, m.p. 182-184°C.                 |
| 25 | 6       | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-(n-butyl)benzamide, m.p. 152-154°C. |
| 30 | 7       | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide,m.p. 185-187°C.       |
| 35 | 8       | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide, m.p. 170-172°C.                |
| 40 | 9       | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide, m.p. 166-168°C.                |
| 45 | 10      | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide, m.p. 216-220°C.                |
|    |         |   |

-79-

| 5  | 11 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethylbenzamide, m.p. 202-204°C.               |
|----|----|--|
| 5  | 12 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]benzeneacetamide, m.p. 148-150°C.                     |
| 10 | 13 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide, m.p. 60-63°C. (white foam) |
| 15 | 14 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide, m.p. 198-200°C.               |
| 20 | 15 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-cyclohexenecarboxamide, m.p. 194-196°C.            |
| 25 | 16 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide                                    |
| 30 | 17 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide                                |
| 35 | 18 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dichlorobenzamide                       |
| 40 | 19 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluorobenzamide                                    |
| 40 | 20 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluorobenzamide                                    |
| 45 | 21 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-methylbenzamide                           |
| 50 | 22 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-4-chlorobenzamide                           |

-80-

|    | 23 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide           |
|----|----|---|
| 5  | 24 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)benzamide         |
| 10 | 25 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethoxybenzamide                |
| 15 | 26 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxy-4-chlorobenzamide           |
| 20 | 27 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethoxybenzamide                |
|    | 28 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide          |
| 25 | 29 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethylbenzamide                 |
| 30 | 30 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide               |
| 35 | 31 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide          |
| 40 | 32 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 45 | 33 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide                 |

| 5  | 34 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]<br>-4-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)<br>benzamide |
|----|----|---|
|    | 35 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide                     |
| 10 | 36 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]<br>-3,5-dimethylbenzamide                              |
| 15 | 37 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide                                     |
| 20 | 38 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dimethylbenzamide                                     |
| 25 | 39 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4,6-trichlorobenzamide                         |
| 30 | 40 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-difluorobenzamide                                     |
| 30 | 41 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-difluorobenzamide                            |
| 35 | 42 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-difluorobenzamide                                     |
| 40 | 43 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]<br>-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide                |
| 45 | 44 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl}<br>-2,3-dichlorobenzamide                     |
| 50 | 45 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-difluorobenzamide                                     |

-82-

|    | 46 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide                               |
|----|----|--|
| 5  | 47 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide                               |
| 10 | 48 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide                                 |
| 15 | 49 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide                    |
| 20 | 50 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide                    |
| 25 | 51 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-6-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide                    |
| 30 | 52 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]<br>-3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)<br>benzamide         |
| 35 | 53 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-<br>chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-fluoro-<br>benzamide |
| 40 | 54 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-5-fluorobenzamide                      |
| 45 | 55 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide                      |
|    | 56 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]benzamide                               |
| 50 |    | -  |

-83-

|    | 57 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide               |
|----|----|---|
| 10 | 58 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide         |
| 15 | 59 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide           |
| 13 | 60 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-2-methylbenzamide                   |
| 20 | 61 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenz-amide              |
| 25 | 62 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenz-amide               |
| 30 | 63 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide           |
| 35 | 64 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylphenyl]-2-(trifluoro-methyl)benzamide |
| 40 | 65 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylphenyl]-3-(trifluoro-methyl)benzamide |
| 45 | 66 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide                    |
| 50 | 67 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4 <u>H</u> -thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorophenyl              |

|    | 68 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide m.p. 256-260°C.        |
|----|----|---|
| 5  | 69 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide                        |
| 10 | 70 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide, m.p. 188-191°C. |
| 15 | 71 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide                     |
| 20 | 72 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-<br>chlorophenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide                    |
| 25 | 73 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3,5-dichlorobenzamide                        |
| 30 | 74 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-benzamide                |
|    | 75 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide                            |
| 40 | 76 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-thio-phenecarboxamide             |
| 45 | 77 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-<br>chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-furane-<br>carboxamide     |
| 50 | 78 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3,5-<br>dichlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methyl-                |
| J0 |    | benzamide   |

-85-

| 5  | 79 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3,5-dichlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethyl-benzamide            |
|----|----|--|
|    | 80 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3,5-dichlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide       |
| 10 | 81 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide                 |
| 15 | 82 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-<br>chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzene-               |
| 20 | 83 | acetamide N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3- chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)- benzamide  |
| 25 | 84 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-y1)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)-benzamide        |
| 30 | 85 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 35 | 86 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 40 | 87 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenz-amide                |
| 45 | 88 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3,5-dimethylbenz-amide                |

30

35

| 5  | 89 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenz-amide N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide |
|----|----|--|
| 10 | 90 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-<br>chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-5-(tri-<br>fluoromethyl)benzamide   |
| 15 | 91 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-<br>chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-6-(tri-<br>fluoromethyl)benzamide   |
| 20 | 92 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno [3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-5-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide  |

#### Example 93

# 2.4-Dichloro-N-[4-[(2-chloro-5.6.7.8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3.2-blazepin-4-yl)carbonyllphenyllbenzamide

To a cooled (ice bath) solution of 0.245 g (0.8 mmol) of 2-chloro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 167  $\mu$ l (1.2 mmol) of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 140  $\mu$ l (1 mmol) of 2,4-dichlorobenzoyl chloride. The solution is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight and diluted with 60 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is washed with 20 ml each of 2N-citric acid, H<sub>2</sub>O, 1M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 0.315 g of white crystals, m.p. 187-189°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 93.

| _  | Ex. No. |   |
|----|---------|---|
| 5  | 94      | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide, m.p. 186-188°C. |
| 10 | 95      | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamidem.p. 245-248°C.         |
| 15 | 96      | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide m.p. 169-170°C.            |
| 20 | 97      | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide                        |
| 25 | 98      | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dichlorobenzamide                        |
| 30 | 99      | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacet-amide                    |
| 35 | 100     | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-fluorobenzamide                            |
| 40 | 101     | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-methyl-benzamide                  |
| 45 | 102     | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-4-chloro-benzamide                  |
| 50 | 103     | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethylbenzamide                        |

| 5  | 104 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide          |
|----|-----|---|
| J  | 105 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide             |
| 10 | 106 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)-benzamide |
| 15 | 107 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethoxybenz-amide        |
| 20 | 108 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethoxybenz-amide        |
| 25 | 109 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxy-4-chloro-benzamide   |
| 30 | 110 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide   |
| 35 | 111 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide   |
| 40 | 112 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide          |
| 45 | 113 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethylbenzamide          |
| 50 | 114 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-(methylthio)benz-amide       |

| 5  | 115 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophene-carboxamide       |
|----|-----|---|
| 10 | 116 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-y1)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophene-carboxamide       |
|    | 117 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-3-furane-carboxamide          |
| 20 | 118 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-furane-carboxamide          |
| 25 | 119 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzene-acetamide              |
| 30 | 120 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzene-acetamide              |
|    | 121 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophene-acetamide         |
| 35 | 122 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 40 | 123 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-3-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 45 | 124 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-3-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 50 |     | • • •   |

-90-

|    | 125 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dimethylbenzamide       |
|----|-----|--|
| 5  | 126 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide       |
| 10 | 127 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3.4-dimethylbenzamide       |
| 15 | 128 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,4,6-trichlorobenz-amide   |
| 20 | 129 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,4-difluorobenzamide       |
| 25 | 130 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,5-difluorobenzamide       |
| 23 | 131 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3,5-difluorobenzamide       |
| 30 | 132 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide |
| 35 | 133 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide       |
| 40 | 134 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,3-difluorobenzamide       |
| 45 | 135 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide |
| 50 | 136 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide |

| 5          | 137 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2,3,5-trichloro-benzamide              |
|------------|-----|---|
|            | 138 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-4-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 10         | 139 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-5-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 15         | 140 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-6-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 25         | 141 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-5-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 30         | 142 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide    |
|            | 143 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-di-chlorobenzamide        |
| 35         | 144 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-di-chlorobenzamide        |
| 40         | 145 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-dimethyl-benzamide          |
| <b>4</b> 5 | 146 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide    |
| 50         | _   | <del>-</del>  |

-92-

| 5  | 147 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide            |
|----|-----|---|
| 10 | 148 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide                 |
|    | 149 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-chlorobenzamide            |
| 15 | 150 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide |
| 20 | 151 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(tri-fluoromethyl)benzamide         |
| 25 | 152 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methyl-thio)benzamide              |
| 30 | 153 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide           |
| 35 | 154 | N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide           |
| 40 |     | • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·   |

#### Example 155

# N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a mixture of 287 mg of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 3 ml of methylene chloride is added 209 µl of triethylamine which is cooled to 0°C is added 207.1 mg of 2-methyl-3-fluorobenzoyl chloride. The cooling bath is removed and

-93-

the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature under argon for 18 hours. An additional 50 ml of methylene chloride and 20 ml of water is added and the separated organic layer washed with 2N citric acid, 1M NaHCO3 and brine. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and passed through a short pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated in vacuo to a white foam which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 305 mg of the desired product as a white solid, m.p. 200-202°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 155.

#### Example NO.

10

| 15 | 156 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4 <u>H</u> -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide, m.p. 233-235°C. |
|----|-----|---|
| 20 | 157 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide                               |
| 25 | 158 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-4-fluorobenzamide           |
| 30 | 159 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide                      |
| 35 | 160 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide                      |
| 40 | 161 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide              |
| 40 | 162 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide                   |

-94-

|            | 163 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide                    |
|------------|-----|--|
| 5          | 164 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)-benzamide           |
| 10         | 165 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide                    |
| 15         | 166 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide                  |
| 20         | 167 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4 <u>H</u> -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide |
| 25         | 168 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4 <u>H</u> -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methyl-2-furane-carboxamide   |
| 30         | 169 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-chlorobenzamide               |
| <b>3</b> 5 | 170 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide             |
| 40         | 171 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methyl-benzamide             |
| 45         | 172 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide                    |
| 50         | 173 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide                        |

20

40

-95-

|    | 174 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide    |
|----|-----|---|
| 5  | 175 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide    |
| 10 | 176 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-benzamide |
| 15 | 177 | N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-4-fluorobenzamide    |

#### Example 178

#### 4-[(2-(3-Pyridinyl)thiazol-4-ylcarbonyl]5,6,7,8tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-blazepine

To a cooled (0°C) solution of 2 mmol of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 6 mmol of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 8 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.2 mmol of 2-(3-pyridinyl)thiazole-4-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 25 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with H2O, 1 N NaHCO3, brine and dried (Na2SO4). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

#### Example 179

# N-[4-[5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo-

35 [b]furan-3-carboxamide

A solution of 240 mg of 4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetra-hydrobenzo[b] furan-3-carbonyl chloride in 3 ml of methylene chloride is cooled to 0°C and while stirring 209 µl of triethylamine is added followed by 273 mg of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine. Stirring is continued at room temperature

-96-

under argon for 18 hours. An additional 240 mg of acid chloride and 209 µ1 of triethylamine in 1 ml of methylene chloride is added. Stirring is continued for 2 hours, heating at reflux for 3 hours and stirring at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo, diluted with 30 ml of ethyl acetate and washed with 12 ml each of water, 2 N citric acid, 1 M sodium bicarbonate, brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a foam which is purified by chromatography on a silica gel preparative plate using 1:1 ethyl acetate-hexane to give 60 mg of the desired product as a white solid, m.p. 188-192°C.

#### Example 180

N-[4-[5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-indole-5-carboxamide

To a solution of 250 mg of indole-5-carboxylic acid in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran at 0°C is added 327 mg of N,N-carbonyldiimidazole followed by stirring for 2 hours. The volatiles are evaported to a residue in vacuo. To

- The volatiles are evaported to a residue in vacuo. To the residue is added 352 mg of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine followed by heating at 100°C for 18 hours. The temperature is increased to 120°C and heating continued for an
- additional 4 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and diluted with 40 ml of ethyl acetate which is washed with water. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by chrommatography on preparative plates by elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate-hexane to give 175 mg of the desired product as a white solid (from ethyl

#### Example 181

acetate).

N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyll-2-pyridinyll-2-methylfurane-3-carboxamide

A solution of 2 mmol of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-

10

30

35

thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 5 mmol of N,N-diisopropylethyl-amine and 2.2 mmol of 6-[(3-methyl-2-furanylacetyl)-amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of CH2Cl2 is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is diluted with 50 ml of CH2Cl2 and 25 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with H2O, 1 N NaHCO3, brine and dried (Na2SO4). The solvent is removed and the residue is chromato-graphed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

#### Example 182

# N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-dimethylamino)-pyridine-3-carboxamide

A mixture of 1.0 g of N-[4-(5,6,7,8-tetra-hydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide, 1 g of K2CO3, 10 ml of aqueous dimethylamine (40 wt % solution in water) in 25 ml of dimethylsulfoxide is heated at 100°C for 8 hours.

The mixture is poured into ice-water and filtered. The solid is washed with water, dried and chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-methanol as solvent to give the product as a solid.

#### Example 183

N-[4-[5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

To a solution of 0.50 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 342 µl of triethylamine in 3.5 ml of dichloromethane cooled to 0°C is added a solution of 0.394 g of 2-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl chloride in 1.5 ml of dichloro-methane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight under argon and added 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of H2O. The CH2Cl2 is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO3 and brine. From the CH2Cl2 is obtained 0.59 g of white crystals,mp219-221°C.

5

10

15

20

-98-

#### Example 184

### N-[4-[(5.6-Dihydro-4H-thieno[3.2-b]azepin-4-y])-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a cooled solution of 0.20 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 137 µl of triethylamine in 3 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 0.142 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 1 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon for 2 days and diluted with 30 ml of dichloromethane and 15 ml of H2O. The organic layer is separated and washed with 15 ml each of 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO3, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate, the filter pad washed with dichloromethane and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 0.215 g of white crystals, m.p. 125-132°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 184.

|    | Example No.<br>185 | Compound<br>N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-   |
|----|--------------------|--|
| 25 | 186                | 3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide  N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]- azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]- 2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide |
| 30 | 187                | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide                                    |
| 35 | 188                | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide                                    |
| 40 | 189                | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide                                    |
|    | 190                | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide                             |

| 5  | 191 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide                      |
|----|-----|--|
| J  | 192 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide                           |
| 10 | 193 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide                            |
| 15 | 194 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)benzamide                |
| 20 | 195 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide                   |
| 25 | 196 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide                   |
| 25 | 197 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide        |
| 30 | 198 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide                   |
| 35 | 199 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophenecarboxamide              |
| 40 | 200 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide              |
|    | 201 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide                     |
| 45 | 202 | N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide                     |
| 50 | 203 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-<br>phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide |
|    |     |  |

#### -100-

|    | 204 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-<br>phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide |
|----|-----|--|
| 5  | 205 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-<br>phenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide |
| 10 | 206 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-<br>phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide      |
| 15 | 207 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-<br>fluoro-2-methylbenzamide           |
| 20 | 208 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-<br>fluoro-2-methylbenzamide           |
| 20 | 209 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide                   |
| 25 | 210 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-<br>dimethylbenzamide                |
| 30 | 211 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide                        |
| 35 | 212 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide                        |
| 40 | 213 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-<br>(trifluoromethyl)benzamide         |
| 40 | 214 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-<br>[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-<br>(methylthio)benzamide              |
| 45 | 215 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide                            |
| 50 | 216 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide                   |

-101-

|    | 217                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide                |
|----|--------------------|---|
| 5  | 218                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-4-fluorobenzamide                |
| 10 | 219                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide                  |
| 15 | 220                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide           |
|    | The described in E | following compounds are prepared as xample 183.   |
| 20 | Ex. No.            |   |
|    | 221                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide    |
| 25 | 222                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide    |
| 30 | 223                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide    |
| 35 | 224                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide         |
| 40 | 225                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide         |
| 30 | 226                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide         |
| 45 | 227                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benz-amide |
| 50 | 228                | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide             |
|    |                    |   |

-102-

| 22<br>5 | 229 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide    |
|---------|-----|---|
|         | 230 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benz-amide |
| 10      | 231 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide      |
| 15      | 232 | N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide               |

#### Example 233

#### 20 4-[4-(n-Butyloxy)benzoyl]-5.6.7.8-tetrahydro-4Hthieno[3.2-blazepine

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.306 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 417  $\mu$ l of triethylamine is added 474  $\mu$ l of 4-(n-butoxy)benzoyl

- chloride. The mixture is stirred for 3 days at room temperature, diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO3, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin
- pad of hydrous magnesium silicate, the pad washed with CH2Cl2 and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is crystallized from hexane containing a small amount of ethyl acetate. The crystals (0.585 g) are purified by chromatography on silica gel plates with hexane-ethyl
- acetate (2:1) as solvent to give 0.40 g of crystals (from ethyl acetate-hexane), m.p.  $87^{\circ}$ C to  $90^{\circ}$ C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 233.

|    | Ex. No. |  |
|----|---------|--|
|    | 234     | 4-[4-(2-Methylbutyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine                 |
| 5  | 235     | 4-[4-(3-Methylbutyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine                 |
| 10 | 236     | 4-[4-(Benzyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetra-<br>hydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine                   |
|    | 237     | 4-[4-(2-chlorobenzyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine                |
| 15 | 238     | 4-[4-[2-(Cyclopentyl)ethyloxy]benzoyl]-<br>5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-<br>azepine |
| 20 | 239     | 4-[4-[2-(Cyclohexyl)ethyloxy]benzoyl]-<br>5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]aze-<br>pine  |
| 25 | 240     | 4-[4-(Cyclopentyl)methoxy]benzoyl]- 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]aze- pine           |
| 23 | 241     | 4-[4-(Cyclohexyl)methoxy]benzoyl]- 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]- azepine            |
| 30 | 242     | 4-[4-(3-Dimethylbutyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepine              |

#### Example 243

# N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 0.306 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 1.11 µl of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.17 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature under argon. The mixture is diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 1 M NaHCO3, brine and dried (Na2SO4). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous

-104-

magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated, concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give a glass. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives 0.35 g of white crystals, m.p. 178-180°C.

As described for Example 243, the following compounds are prepared (Table A).

-105-

| Rx.No | <b>R</b> 1        | R <sub>2</sub> | <b>R</b> 3 | R4   | R5  | x  |
|-------|-------------------|----------------|------------|------|-----|----|
| 244   | СНЗ               | Н              | н          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 245   | CH3               | Н              | Н          | F    | Н   | Н  |
| 246   | СНЗ               | F              | Н          | н    | Н   | Н  |
| 247   | Н                 | оснз           | осн3       | осн3 | н   | н  |
| 248   | Cl                | н              | Н          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 249   | F                 | н              | F          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 250   | Br                | Н              | н          | Н    | н   | Н  |
| 251   | Cl                | н              | F          | н    | Н   | Н  |
| 252   | Ph                | Н              | н          | н    | н   | Н  |
| 253   | Cl                | Н              | н          | Br   | Н   | Н  |
| 254   | СНЗ               | Н              | Н          | H    | н   | Br |
| 255   | СНЗ               | Н              | н          | F    | Н   | Cl |
| 256   | Cl                | Н              | Н          | Cl   | Н   | Н  |
| 257   | СНЗ               | СНЗ            | н          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 258   | Cl                | Н              | н          | 4    | Н   | Н  |
| 259   | Cl                | Н              | Н          | CF3  | Н   | Н  |
| 260   | Cl                | Н              | н          | Н    | F   | Н  |
| 261   | Cl                | н              | н          | н    | Cl  | Н  |
| 262   | Cl                | Н              | Н          | F    | Н   | н  |
| 263   | \(\sigma_n\)      | Н              | Н          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 264   | $\mathcal{L}_{s}$ | н              | Н          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 265   | СНЗ               | Н              | н          | н    | СНЗ | Н  |
| 266   | Cl                | Н              | н          | F    | Н   | Cl |
| 267   | Cl                | H              | F          | н    | Н   | Cl |
| 268   | Cl                | Cl             | н          | н    | н   | Н  |
| 269   | C1                | Н              | н          | Cl   | н   | Н  |
| 270   | -осн3             | Н              | Н          | Н    | Н   | Н  |
| 271   | OCF3              | Н              | Н          | Н    | н   | н  |

| Ex.No | Rj              | R2  | Rg              | R4    | R5  | x |
|-------|-----------------|-----|-----------------|-------|-----|---|
| 272   | -CF3            | Н   | H               | Н     | Н   | Н |
| 273   | Cl              | Cl  | Н               | Cl    | Н   | н |
| 274   | -scH3           | Н   | н               | Н     | Н   | н |
| 275   | Cl              | Н   | NO <sub>2</sub> | Н     | Н   | Н |
| 276   | СНЗ             | H   | Н               | СНЗ   | н   | н |
| 277   | F               | Н   | Н               | Cl    | Н   | Н |
| 278   | Cl              | Н   | Н               | NH2   | Н   | н |
| 279   | F               | CF3 | Н               | н     | Н   | Н |
| 280   | -оснз           | Н   | Н               | Cl    | Н   | Н |
| 281   | Cl              | Н   | H               | -SCH3 | Н   | н |
| 282   | F               | Н   | Н               | Н     | CF3 | Н |
| 283   | F               | Н   | CF3             | Н     | н   | Н |
| 284   | CF3             | Н   | F               | Н     | Н   | н |
| 285   | NO <sub>2</sub> | Н   | Н               | Н     | н   | н |
| 286   | F               | H   | Н               | н     | Н   | Н |
| 287   | Cl              | Н   | NH2             | Н     | Н   | Н |

- 108 -

#### Example 288

# N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 0.306 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 1.11 µl of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.2 g of 6-[(2-methylphenylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is washed with H2O, 1 N NaHCO3, H2O, brine and dried (Na2SO4). The solution is concentrated to dryness under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica gel to give the product as a solid.

As described for Example 288, the following compounds are prepared (Table B).

-109-

Table B

| Ex No. | R1    | R <sub>2</sub> | R3    | R4    | <b>R</b> 5 | x  |
|--------|-------|----------------|-------|-------|------------|----|
| 289    | CH3   | Н              | Н     | Н     | Н          | Н  |
| 290    | СНЗ   | Н              | Н     | н     | Н          | Br |
| 291    | CH3   | Н              | Н     | Н     | Н          | Cl |
| 292    | Cl    | Н              | Н     | Н     | Н          | Н  |
| 293    | Cl    | Н              | Н     | Н     | Н          | Br |
| 294    | Cl    | Ħ              | Н     | Н     | н          | Cl |
| 295    | C1    | Н              | Cl    | Н     | Н          | Н  |
| 296    | Cl    | H              | Cl    | Н     | н          | Br |
| 297    | Cl    | н              | Cl    | . Н   | Н          | Cl |
| 298    | -оснз | H              | H     | Н     | Н          | Н  |
| 299    | -оснз | H              | H     | Н     | Н          | Br |
| 300    | -оснз | H              | Н     | н     | H          | C1 |
| 301    | -оснз | Н              | н     | -осн3 | Н          | Н  |
| 302    | -оснз | Н              | н     | -оснз | Н          | Br |
| 303    | -оснз | н              | н     | -оснз | H          | Cl |
| 304    | Н     | -оснз          | -оснз | Н     | Н          | Н  |
| 305    | Н     | -оснз          | -оснз | Н     | Н          | Br |
| 306    | Н     | -оснз          | -оснз | Н     | Н          | Cl |
| 307    | н     | Cl             | н     | н     | Н          | Н  |
| 308    | Н     | Cl             | Н     | Н     | н          | Br |
| 309    | Н     | Cl             | Н     | н     | н          | Cl |
| 310    | Н     | н              | C1    | н     | Н          | н  |
| 311    | н     | н              | C1    | н     | Н          | Br |
| 312    | н     | н              | Cl    | н     | н          | C1 |
| 313    | F     | Н              | Н     | Н     | н          | н  |
| 314    | F     | Н              | н     | н     | Н          | Br |
| 315    | F     | Н              | н     | Н     | Н          | Cl |
| 316    | н     | F              | Н     | Н     | Н          | Н  |
| 317    | Н     | F              | Н     | Н     | н          | Br |
| 318    | H     | F              | н     | н     | Н          | Cl |
| 319    | н     | н              | F     | н     | Н          | Н  |

WO 96/22294

### PCT/US96/01096

-111-

| Ex No. | R1 | R2  | Rg | R4 | R5 | x  |
|--------|----|-----|----|----|----|----|
| 320    | н  | Н   | F  | Н  | Н  | Br |
| 321    | н  | Н   | F  | Н  | Н  | Cl |
| 322    | Н  | СНЗ | н  | Н  | Н  | Н  |
| 323    | Н  | СНЗ | н  | Н  | Н  | Br |
| 324    | Н  | СНЗ | н  | Н  | Н  | Cl |

.

.

- 112 -

#### Example 325

# 5.6.7.8-Tetrahydro-4-[4-[[[(2-methylphenyl)-amino]carbonyl]amino]benzoyl]-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

A mixture of 0.409 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 0.60 g of 2-methylphenylisocyanate in 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran is heated in an oil bath at 110°C for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on preparative silica gel plates with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives 0.33 g of white crystals, m.p. 179-182°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described for Example 325 (Table C).

# Table C

|        |       |     |    | *************************************** | *************************************** | \$50000000000000000000000000000000000000 |
|--------|-------|-----|----|---|---|--|
| Ex.No. | R1    | R2  | R3 | R4                                      | R5                                      | X  |
| 326    | CH3   | CH3 | Н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | н  |
| 327    | СНЗ   | Н   | Н  | Н                                       | н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 328    | СНЗ   | Н   | н  | Н                                       | н                                       | СНЗ                                      |
| 329    | CH3   | Н   | C1 | Н                                       | н                                       | Н  |
| 330    | CH3   | н   | Н  | CH3                                     | н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 331    | СНЗ   | Н   | Н  | F                                       | н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 332    | CH3   | F   | Н  | Н                                       | н                                       | Н  |
| 333    | Ç1    | н   | Н  | н                                       | н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 334    | C1    | н   | Н  | F                                       | н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 335    | C1    | Н   | Н  | н                                       | Н                                       | н  |
| 336    | C1    | Н   | F  | н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 337    | C1    | Cl  | н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 338    | СНЗ   | н   | н  | Н                                       | Cl                                      | Н  |
| 339    | CF 30 | н   | н  | н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 340    | СНЗЅ  | Н   | н  | н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 341    | Cl    | C1  | н  | C1                                      | Н                                       | СНЗ                                      |
| 342    | Cl    | Н   | н  | н                                       | F                                       | Cl                                       |
| 343    | н     | CF3 | н  | н                                       | н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 344    | Н     | CF3 | н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | Н  |
| 345    | CF3   | н   | Cl | Н                                       | Н                                       | C1                                       |
| 346    | СНЗО  | н   | Cl | Н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 347    | Cl    | Н   | н  | Н                                       | Cl                                      | H  |
| 348    | C1    | н   | н  | Н                                       | Cl                                      | Cl                                       |
| 349    | ø     | н   | н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 350    | ø     | Н   | Н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | Н  |
| 351    | СНЗ   | F   | Н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | СНЗ                                      |
| 352    | снз   | F   | Н  | Н                                       | Н                                       | Cl                                       |
| 353    | снз   | н   | Н  | F                                       | н                                       | Н  |
| 354    | снз   | н   | Н  | F                                       | Н                                       | СНЗ                                      |
| 355    | снз   | н   | н  | F                                       | Н                                       | C1                                       |
| 356    | F     | н   | Cl | Н                                       | Н                                       | н  |

-115-

| Ex.No. | R <sub>1</sub> | R <sub>2</sub> | R3 | R4 |    | Х  |
|--------|----------------|----------------|----|----|----|----|
| 357    | F              | н              | Н  | Cl | Н  | Cl |
| 358    | F              | Н              | Н  | Н  | Cl | Cl |

#### Example 359

# 5.6.7.8-Tetrahydro-4-[4-[[(methylphenylamino)]-carbonyl]amino]benzoyl]-4H-thieno[3.2-b]azepine

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.409 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepine and 432 µl of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added under argon 0.336 g of N-phenyl-N-methylcarbamoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred overnight and an additional 0.672 g of N-phenyl-N-methylcarbamoyl chloride, 864 µl N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine and 10 ml of toluene added. The mixture refluxed 16 hours and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives 0.34 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 160-162°C.

### Example 360

# N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 4-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 5 mmol of triethylamine in 10 ml of dichloromethane under argon is reacted with [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride for 16 hours at room temperature to give the product as a solid.

#### Example 361

## 4-[5-(2-Pyridinyl)thien-2-ylcarbonyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a cooled solution (0°C) of 0.23 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 523  $\mu$ l of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 0.436 g of 5-(2-pyridinyl)thiophene-2-carbonyl

-116-

chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours under argon and diluted with 40 ml of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 1 N NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue is crystallized from ethyl acetate plus a small amount of hexane to give 0.485 g of tan crystals, m.p. 150-154°C.

#### Example 362

# 4-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-blazepine

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno[3,2- $\underline{b}$ ]azepine, 5 mmol of triethylamine and 2.1 mmol of [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours to give the product as a solid.

The subject compounds of the present invention are tested for biological activity.

### Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

Rat liver plasma membranes expressing the vasopressin V1 receptor subtypes are isolated by sucrose density gradient according to the method described by Lesko et al., (1973). These membranes are quickly suspended in 50.0 mM Tris • HCl buffer, pH 7.4, containing 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and kept frozen at -70°C until used in subsequent binding experiments. For binding experiments, the following is added to the wells of a ninety-six well format microtiter plate: 100  $\mu$ l of 100.0 mM Tris • HCl buffer containing 10.0 mM MgCl2, 0.2% heat inactivated BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %, 1,10phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0  $\mu$ l of [phenylalanyl-3,4,5-3H] vasopressin (S.A. 45.1 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM, and the

-117-

reaction initiated by the addition of 80 µl of tissue membranes containing 20 µg of tissue protein. The plates are kept undisturbed on the bench top at room temperature for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific samples are assayed in the presence of 0.1 µM of the unlabeled antagonist phenylalanylvasopressin, added in 20.0 µl volume to a final incubation volume of 200 µl. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC50 values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

### Binding Assay to Rat Kidney Medullary V2 Receptors

Medullary tissues from rat kidneys are dissected out, cut into small pieces and let soak in a 0.154 mM sodium chloride solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA with many changes of the liquid phase, until the solution is clear of blood. The tissue is homogenized in a 0.25  ${\tt M}$ sucrose solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA and 0.1 mM PMSF using a Potter-Elvehjem homogenizer with a teflon pestle. The homogenate is filtered through several layers (4 layers) of cheese cloth. The filtrate is rehomogenized using a dounce homogenizer, with a tight fitting pestle. The final homogenate is contrifuged at 1500 x q for 15 The nuclear pellet is discarded and the supernatant fluid recentrifuged at 40,000 x g for 30 min. resulting pellet formed contains a dark inner part with the exterior, slightly pink. The pink outer part is suspended in a small amount of 50.0 mM Tris • HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry's method (Lowry et al, J. Biol. Chem., 1953). The membrane suspension is stored at -70°C, in 50.0 mM Tris·HCl, containing 0.2% inactivated BSA and 0.1 mM PMSF in

-118-

aliquots of 1.0 ml containing 10.0 mg protein per ml of suspension until use in subsequent binding experiments.

For binding experiments, the following is added in  $\mu$ l volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0  $\mu$ l of 100.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0  $\mu$ l of [3H] Arginine8, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0  $\mu l$  of tissue membranes (200.0  $\mu$ g tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0  $\mu\text{M}$  of unlabeled ligand, added in 20  $\mu\text{l}$ volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0  $\mu$ l volume to a final incubation volume of 200  $\mu$ l. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligandreceptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC50 values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

# Radioligand Binding Experiments with Human Platelet Membranes

Platelet Source: Hudson Valley Blood Services, Westchester Medical Center, Valhalla, NY.

#### Platelet Membrane Preparation:

Frozen platelet rich plasma (PRP), received from the Hudson Valley Blood Services are thawed to room temperature. The tubes containing the PRP are centrifuged at  $16,000 \times g$  for 10 min. at  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$  and the superna-

tant fluid discarded. The platelets resuspended in an equal volume of 50.0 mM Tris•HCl, pH 7.5 containing 120 mM NaCl and 20.0 mM EDTA. The suspension is recentrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 min. This washing step is repeated one more time. The wash is discarded and the lysed pellets homogenized in low ionic strength buffer of Tris•HCl, 5.0 mM, pH 7.5 containing 5.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 min. The resulting pellet is resuspended in Tris•HCl buffer, 70.0 mM, pH 7.5 and recentrifuged at 39,000 x g for 10 min. The final pellet is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer pH 7.4 containing 120 mM NaCl and 5.0 mM HCl to give 1.0-2.0 mg protein per ml of suspension.

# Binding to Vasopressin V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet Membranes:

In wells of a 96 well format microtiter plate, add 100 µl of 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.2% BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors (aprotinin, leupeptin etc.). Then add 20  $\mu$ l of [<sup>3</sup>H]Ligand: (Manning or  ${\tt Arg}^{\tt 8}{\tt Vasopressin}$ ), to give final concentrations ranging from 0.01 to 10.0 nM. Initiate the binding by adding 80.0  $\mu$ l of platelet suspension (approx. 100  $\mu$ g protein). Mix all reagents by pipetting the mixture up and down a few times. Non-specific binding is measured in the presence of 1.0  $\mu M$  of unlabeled ligand (Manning or Arg<sup>8</sup>Vasopressin). Let the mixture stand undisturbed at room temperature for ninety (90) min. Upon this time, rapidly filter off the incubate under vacuum suction over GF/B filters, using a Brandel® Harvester. Determine the radioactivity caught on the filter disks by the addition of liquid scintillant and counting in a liquid scintillator

-120-

Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2)
Transfected with the cDNA expressing the Human V2
Vasopressin Receptor

#### Membrane Preparation

Flasks of 175 ml capacity, containing attached cells grown to confluence are cleared of culture medium by aspiration. The flasks containing the attached cells are rinsed with  $2 \times 5$  ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and the liquid aspirated off each time. Finally, 5 ml of an enzyme free dissociation Hank's based solution (Specialty Media, Inc., Lafayette, NJ) is added and the flasks are left undisturbed for 2 min. The content of all flasks is poured into a centrifuge tube and the cells pelleted at 300 x g for 15 min. The Hank's based solution is aspirated off and the cells homo-genized with a polytron at setting #6 for 10 sec in 10.0 mM Tris.HCl buffer, pH 7.4 containing 0.25 M sucrose and 1.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at  $1500 \times g$  for  $10 \min to$ remove ghost membranes. The supernatant fluid is centrifuged at  $100,000 \times g$  for 60 min to pellet the receptor protein.. Upon completion, the pellet is resuspended in a small volume of 50.0 mM Tris·HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry method and the receptor membranes are suspended in 50.0 mM Tris • HCl buffer containing 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to give 2.5 mg receptor protein per ml of suspension.

-121-

#### Receptor Binding

For binding experiments, the following is added in  $\mu$ l volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0  $\mu$ l of 100.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl2 and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0  $\mu$ l of [3H] Arginine8, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0  $\mu l$  of tissue membranes (200.0  $\mu$ g tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min to reach equilbrium. Non-specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0  $\mu\text{M}$  of unlabeled ligand, added in 20  $\mu\text{l}$ volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0  $\mu l$  volume to a final incubation volume of 200  $\mu$ l. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligandreceptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC50 values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

# Vasopressin V2 Antagonist Activity in Conscious Hyrdated Rats

Conscious hydrated rats are treated with compounds under study from 0.1 to 100 mg/kg orally or vehicle. Two to four rats are used for each compound. One hour later, arginine vasopressin (AVP, antidiuretic hormone, ADH) dissolved in peanut oil is administered at 0.4  $\mu$ g/kg intraperitoneally. Two rats in each test would not receive arginine vasopressin but only the vehicle (peanut oil) to serve as water-loading control. Twenty

minutes later each rat is given 30 mL/kg of deionized water orally by gavage and is placed indivi-dually in a metabolic cage equipped with a funnel and a graduated glass cylinder to collect urine for four hours. Urine volume is measured and osmolality analyzed by use of a Fiske One-Ten osmometer (Fiske Assoc., Norwood, MA USA). Urinary sodium, potassium, and chloride are analyzed by use of ion-specific electrodes in a Beckman E3 (Electrolyte 3) Analyzer.

In the following results, decreased urine volume and decreased osmolality relative to AVP-control indicates activity. The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Table 3.

### Vasopressin V<sub>1</sub> Antagonist Activity in Conscious Rats

Conscious rats are restrained in a supine position with elastic tape. The area at the base of the tail is locally anesthetized by subcutaneous infiltration with 2% procaine (0.2 ml). Using aseptic technique the ventral caudal tail artery is isolated and a cannula made of PE 10 and 20 (heat-fused) tubing is passed into the lower abdominal aorta. The cannula is secured, heparinized (1000 i.u./cc), sealed and the would closed with one or two stitches of Dexon 4-0. The caudal vein is also cannulated in the same manner for intravenous drug administration. The duration of the surgery is approximately 5 minutes. Additional local anesthesia (2% procaine or lidocaine) is provided as needed.

The animals are placed in plastic restraining cages in an upright position. The cannula is attached to a Statham P23Db pressure transducer and pulsatile blood pressure is recorded. Increase of systolic blood pressure responses to arginine vasopressin 0.01 and 0.2 international unit (I.U.) (350 I.U.=1 mg) injections are recorded prior to any drug (compound) administration,

-123-

after which each rat is dosed orally with compounds under study 0.1-100 mg/kg (10 cc/kg) or intravenously 0.1-30 mg/kg (1 cc/kg). The vasopressin injections are repeated 30,60,90,120,180,240 and 300 min. later. Percentage of antagonism by the compound is calculated using the predrug vasopressin vasopressor response as 100%.

The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Table 4.

Table 1

### Table 1 (cont'd)

|         |   |                                 | IC             | 50 (µM)        |
|---------|---|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Ex. No. | R | Ar                              | ٧ <sub>1</sub> | v <sub>2</sub> |
| 1       | н |                                 | 1.65           | 0.44           |
| 8       | н | CH <sub>3</sub>                 | 0.20           | 0.12           |
| 2       | н | -CH <sub>2</sub> —O             | 0.0037         | 0.0026         |
| 9       | н | CI                              | 0.21           | 0.034          |
| 10      | н | CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> | 0.23           | 0.052          |

Table 1 (cont'd)

|         |    |                                  |                | IC 50(µM) |
|---------|----|----------------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| Ex. No. | R  | Ar                               | V <sub>1</sub> | $v_2$     |
| 11      | н  | CH <sub>3</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub> | 0.28           | 0.060     |
| 96      | CI | CH <sub>3</sub>                  | 0.088          | 0.010     |
| 180     | н  | O N H                            | 8.0            | 0.37      |
| 12      | Н  | -CH <sub>2</sub> —0              | 0.26           | 0.036     |
| 179     | н  |                                  | 1.30           | 5.5       |

### Table 1 (cont'd)

|         |    |                     |       | IC 50 (µM) |
|---------|----|---------------------|-------|------------|
| Ex. No. | R  | Ar                  | $V_1$ | $v_2$      |
| 99      | CI | -CH <sub>2</sub> —O | 0.020 | 0.0033     |
| 13      | н  | -CH <sub>2</sub> —0 | 0.014 | 0.010      |
| 14      | н  | CI                  | 0.12  | 0.03       |
| 15      | Н  |                     | 0.065 | 0.055      |
| 93      | CI | CI O — CI           | 0.23  | 0.019      |

-128-

Table 1 (cont'd)

|         |    |                   |                | IC 50 (µM)     |
|---------|----|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Ex. No. | R  | Ar                | V <sub>1</sub> | v <sub>2</sub> |
| 94      | CI | CH <sub>3</sub> F | 0.16           | 0.010          |
| 95      | CI | CI                | 0.19*          | 0.004**        |

### Table 2

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

EX. NO. STRUCTURE V1 V2
IC50(LLM) IC50(LLM)

157

3.6 0.25

CH<sub>3</sub>

5.5 0.33

### Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

EX. NO. STRUCTURE  $v_1$   $v_2$   $IC_{50}(\mu M)$   $IC_{50}(\mu M)$ 

### Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

-132-

### Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

EX. NO.

STRUCTURE

V<sub>1</sub>

V<sub>2</sub>

IC<sub>50</sub> (μΜ) IC<sub>50</sub> (μΜ)

WO 96/22294

-133-

### Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

EX. NO.

STRUCTURE

 $v_1$   $v_2$ 

<u>ΙC<sub>50</sub>(μΜ)</u> <u>ΙC<sub>50</sub>(μΜ)</u>

252 S 0.0061

-134-

Table 3
Vasopressin V2 Antagonist Activity in Conscious
Hydrated Rats

| Ex.<br>No. | Dose<br>P.O.<br>mg/kg | N | Urine Volume<br>ml/4 hours | Osmolality<br>mOsm/kg |
|------------|-----------------------|---|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 3          | 100                   | 2 | 10                         | 1081                  |
| 7          | 100                   | 2 | 6.2                        |                       |
| 2          | 10                    | 4 | 2.8                        |                       |
| 11         | 30                    | 2 | 5                          | 1420                  |
| 96         | 30                    | 2 | 16.1                       | 465                   |
| 99         | 30                    | 2 | 10                         | 1135                  |
| 13         | 30                    | 2 | 9.5                        | 516                   |
| 14         | 30                    | 2 | 3.5                        | 1432                  |
| 15         | 30                    | 2 | 4.6                        | 1397                  |
| 93         | 10                    | 2 | 7.6                        | 1056                  |
| 94         | 10                    | 2 | 8.8                        | 910                   |
| 157        | 10                    | 2 | 6.5                        | 1070                  |
| 156        | 10                    | 2 | 3.8                        | 1266                  |
| 155        | 10                    | 2 | 4.5                        | 1053                  |
| 95         | 10                    | 2 | 5                          | 1122                  |
| 70         | 10                    | 2 | 4                          | 1070                  |
| 183        | 10                    | 2 | 8.3                        | 512                   |
| 68         | 10                    | 2 | 10.3                       | 647                   |

Table 4
Vasopressin (VAS) Vasopressor Response

| Ex. No. | Dose<br>(mg/kg) | Max. 4<br>Inhibition | Time (Min) |
|---------|-----------------|----------------------|------------|
| 2       | 10 iv           | 7.6                  | 60         |
| 9       | 30 po           | 17                   | 180        |
| 10      | 30 po           | i                    | i          |
| 96      | 10 iv           | 65                   | 90         |
| 99      | 10 iv           | 58                   | 90         |
| 13      | 10 iv           | 80                   | 60         |
| 14      | 20 iv           | 61                   | 120        |
| 15      | 10 iv           | 69                   | 30         |
| 93      | 20 iv           | 77                   | 90         |
| 94      | 20 iv           | 74                   | 90         |
| 157     | 20 iv           | 66                   | 60         |
| 156     | 20 iv           | 63                   | 240        |
| 155     | 20 iv           | 62                   | 60         |
| 95      | 10 iv           | 61                   | 30         |
| 70      | 20 iv           | 67                   | 120        |
| 183     | 30 iv           | 78                   | 120        |
| 68      | 20 iv           | 50                   | 120        |

### Oxytocin Receptor Binding

### (a) Membrane Preparation

Female Sprague-Dawley rats weighing approximately 200-250 g are injected intramuscularly (i.m.) with 0.3 mg/kg of body weight of diethylstilbestrol (DES). The rats are sacrificed 18 hours later under pentobarbital anesthesia. The uteri are dissected out, cleaned of fat and connective tissues and rinsed in 50 ml of normal saline. The tissue pooled from six rats is homogenized in 50 ml of 0.01 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.5 mM dithiothreitol and 1.0 mM EDTA, adjusted to pH 7.4,

-136-

using a polytron at setting 6 with three passes of 10 sec each. The homogenate is passed through two (2) layers of cheesecloth and the filtrate centrifuged at 1000 x g for 10 min. The clear supernatant is removed and recentrifuged at 165,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet containing the oxytocin receptors is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl containing 5.0 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> at pH 7.4, to give a protein concentration of 2.5 mg/ml of tissue suspension. This preparation is used in subsequent binding assays with [3H]Oxytocin.

### (b) Radioligand Binding

Binding of  $3.5-[^3H]$ Oxytocin ( $[^3H]$ OT) to its receptors is done in microtiter plates using [3H]OT, at various concentrations, in an assay buffer of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, pH 7.4 and containing 5.0 mM MgCl2, and a mixture of protease inhibitors: BSA, 0.1 mg; aprotinin, 1.0 mg; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg; trypsin, 10.0 mg; and PMSF, 0.3 mg per 100 ml of buffer solution. Nonspecific binding is determined in the presence of 1.0 uM unlabeled OT. The binding reaction is terminated after 60 min., at 22°C, by rapid filtration through glass fiber filters using a Brandel® cell harvester (Biomedical Research and Development Laboratories, Inc., Gaithersburg, MD). Competition experiments are conducted at equilibrium using 1.0 nM  $[^3H]$ OT and varying the concentration of the displacing agents. The concentrations of agent displacing 50% of [3H]OT at its sites (IC50) are calculated by a computer assisted LUNDON-2 program (LUNDON SOFTWARE INC., Ohio, USA).

The results of this assay on representative examples are shown in Table 5.

-137-

Table 5
Oxytocin Binding Assay

| Ex. No. | Conc. | 1 Inhibition | IC <u>50_(IM)</u> |
|---------|-------|--------------|-------------------|
| 9       | 10    | 60           | 5.2               |
| 13      | 10    | 95           | 0.68              |
| 68      | 10    | 55           |                   |
| 70      | 10    | 97           | 0.51              |
| 93      | 10    | 83           | 1.8               |
| 94      | 10    | 97           | 0.95              |
| 95      | 10    | 85           | 1.38              |
| 96      | 1.25  | 58           | 0.27              |
| 155     | 10    | 16           |                   |
| 156     | 10    | 0            |                   |
| 157     | 10    | 29           |                   |
| 183     | 10    | 86           | 0.6               |
| 184     | 10    | 76           |                   |
| 233     | 10    | 93           | 0.95              |
| 243     | 10    | 96           | 0.34              |
| 252     | 2.5   | 93           | 0.17              |

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from pharmaceutically or physiologically acceptable acids or bases. These salts include, but are not limited to, the following: salts with inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and, as the case may be, such organic acids as acetic acid, oxalic acid, succinic acid, and maleic acid. Other salts include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases. The compounds can also be used in the form of esters, carbamates and other conventional "pro-drug" forms, which, when administered in such form,

-138-

convert to the active moiety in vivo.

When the compounds are employed for the above utilities, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible powders, granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar, and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solutions or suspensions containing from about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 25 to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

The effective dosage of active ingredient employed may vary depending on the particular compound employed, the mode of administration and the severity of the condition being treated. However, in general, satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.5 to about 500 mg/kg of animal body weight, preferably given in divided doses two to four times a day, or in a sustained release form. For most large mammals the total daily dosage is from about 1 to 100 mg, preferably from about 2 to 80 mg. Dosage forms suitable for internal use comprise from about 0.5 to 500 mg of the active compound in intimate admixture with a solid or liquid pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses may be administered daily or the dose may be proportionally reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation.

These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfactants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration desired. Adjuvants customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

These active compounds may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydrox-ypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in glycerol, liquid, polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage and use, these preparations contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exits. It must be stable under conditions of manufacture and

-140-

storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacterial and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oil.

The new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of this invention are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

In particular, the vasopressin antagonists of this invention are therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

In particular, the oxytocin antagonists of this invention are useful in the prevention of preterm labor and premature birth which is a significant cause of infant health problems and infant mortality.

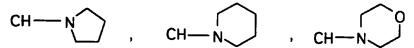
What is claimed is:

1. A compound selected from those of the general Formula I:

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

-CH2CH2- and when Y is -CH2-, E is selected from the moieties:

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -C[N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),

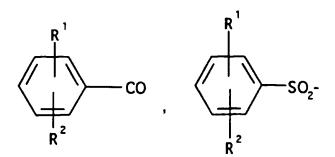


S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:



represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy or (C1-C3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C1-C3)lower alkoxy; R³ is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -C0-lower alkyl(C1-C3),



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as  $(C_3-C_6)$  cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently

selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{R_{b}}{=} , -(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{O}{=} ,$$

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_{\rm b}$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

$$R^{8}$$
 $CH_{2}$ 
,  $R^{8}$ 

or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O | | -O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-( $CH_2$ )<sub>2</sub>- $N < R_b$  , -NH( $CH_2$ )<sub>q</sub>- $CON < R_b$  ,

$$-NH(CH_2)_qN < R_b R_b$$
,  $-O-(CH_2)_2N < R_b R_b$ 

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

## -M-Rd

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6), when M is O, S, NH, NCH3 and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, -(CH$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$R^{5}$$
 $R^{8}$ 
 $R^{9}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-148-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C1-C3) NHCO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), and NSO2lower alkyl(C1-C3);  $R^7$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3) and CF3;  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)qN(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10}$  is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

2. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyrimidine heterocyclic ring.

 $\mbox{3. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the } \mbox{moiety:} \label{eq:compound}$ 



is an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyridazine heterocyclic ring.

4. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrrole ring.

5. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic furane ring.

6. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromtic thiophene ring.

7. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrazole ring.

8. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic oxazole ring.

9. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



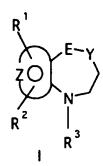
is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic isoxazole ring.

10. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiazole ring.

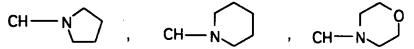
11. A compound selected from those of the formula:



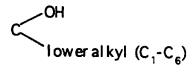
wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH2; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),



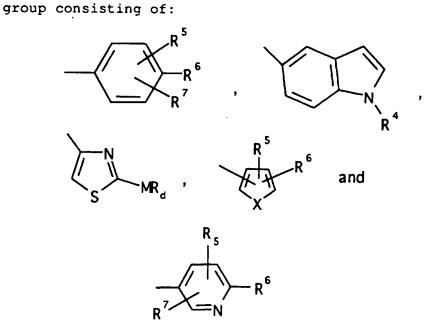
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

20)

5

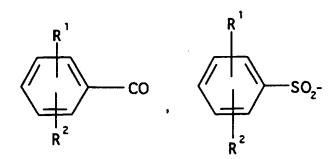
represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyrimidine heterocyclic ring, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy or (C1-C3)lower alkylamino;

R<sup>3</sup> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;

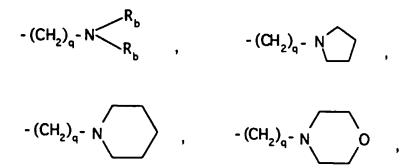
R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

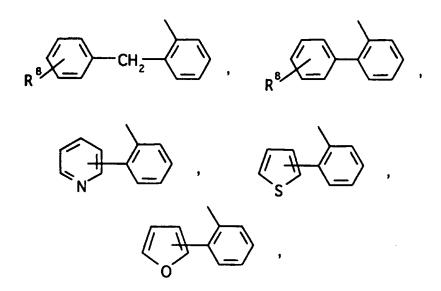


-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_b$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



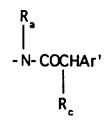
or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -C0-lower alkyl(C1-C3), CHO, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy, -C02-lower alkyl(C1-C3), and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O | | -O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_{2})_{2}-N < R_{b} \\ R_{b} , -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-CON < R_{b} \\ -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b} \\ R_{b} , -O-(CH_{2})_{2}N < R_{b} \\ R_{b}$$

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

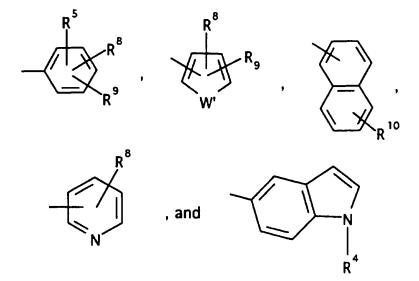
-M-Rd

wherein Rd is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or  $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-Rd when Rd is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, -(CH$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );

R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

-S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)qN(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10} \text{ is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3)} \text{ and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.}$ 

12. A compound selected from those of the formula:



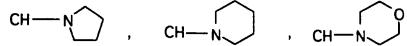
10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

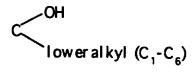
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C1-C6), -NCO-lower alkyl(C1-C6), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

20

5

10

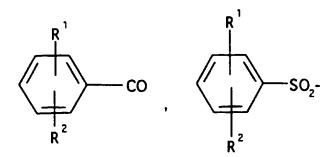
represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyridazine ring, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy or (C1-C3)lower alkylamino; R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

$$R^{5}$$
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{7}$ 
 $R^{5}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{4}$ 
 $R^{5}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{7}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3),

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-160-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

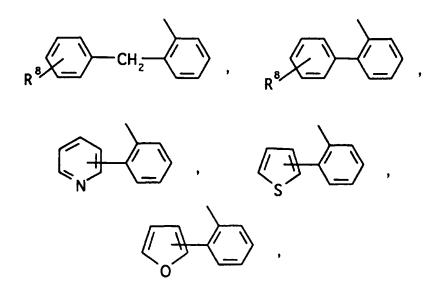
$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow R_{b}$$
  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow$  ,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow O$  ,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_b$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



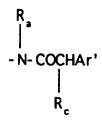
or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -C0-lower alkyl(C1-C3), CHO, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy, -C02-lower alkyl(C1-C3), and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O 
$$\parallel$$
 -O-C-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or  $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety  $-M-R_d$  wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_2)_p \xrightarrow{R^1} \qquad -(CH_2)_p \xrightarrow$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
 $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{9}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ); 10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are

20

independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -N-[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), NHCO lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -O-CO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -N( $C_1$ )(CH2)q-N( $C_2$ ) and CF3 and; R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

13. A compound selected from those of the 10 formula:

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

 $-CH_2CH_2-$  and when Y is  $-CH_2-$ , E is selected from the 15 moieties

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -C[N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,

$$CH-N$$
 ,  $CH-N$  ,  $CH-N$ 

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ ) $_mNH_2$ ; -CHNH( $CH_2$ ) $_m$ -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ ) $_m$ -N[lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ )] -CHNH( $CH_2$ ) $_m$ -S-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ ) $_m$ -O-

lower alkyl(C1-C6),

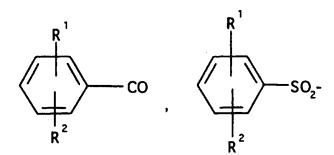
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

5 and the moiety:

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrrole ring, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy or (C1-C3)lower alkylamino; R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;

R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),



-SO2-lower alkyl(C1-C3); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

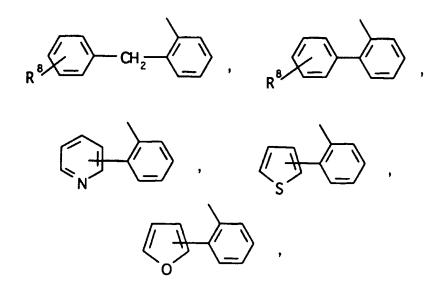
$$-(CH_2)_q - N < R_b \qquad , \qquad -(CH_2)_q - N$$

$$-(CH_2)_q - N$$
,  $-(CH_2)_q - N$ 
O

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_b$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



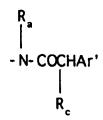
or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2$ -lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O | | -O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_{2})_{2}-N < R_{b} \\ R_{b} , -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-CON < R_{b} \\ -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b} \\ R_{b} , -O-(CH_{2})_{2}N < R_{b} \\ R_{b}$$

wherein  $R_{\text{a}}$  and  $R_{\text{b}}$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

 $-M-R_{c}$ 

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) wherein M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_2)_p \xrightarrow{R^1}, -(CH_2)_p \xrightarrow{R^1}, -(CH_2)_p$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

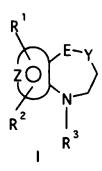
5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
 $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{9}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

-S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10}$  is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

14. A compound selected from those of the formula:



10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

 $-CH_2CH_2-$  and when Y is  $-CH_2-$ , E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -C[N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,

$$CH-N$$
 ,  $CH-N$  ,  $CH-N$ 

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),

$$C$$

$$OH$$

$$loweralkyl (C1-C6)$$

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

20

5

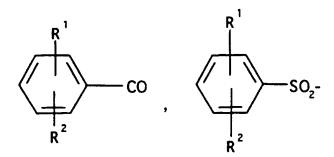
represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic furane ring, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, halogen, amino,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkylamino;

10 R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{7}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{6}$ 

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

WO 96/22294



-SO2-lower alkyl(C1-C3); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_{\dot{a}}$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

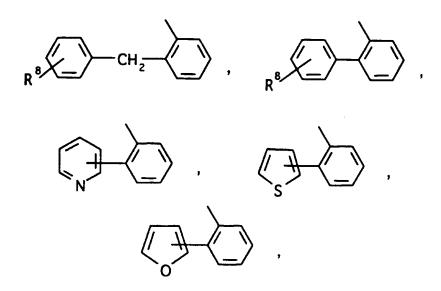
$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow R_{b}$$
,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow$ ,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow O$ ,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_b$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



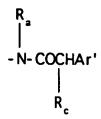
or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2$ -lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O | | -O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_{2})_{2}-N < R_{b} \\ R_{b} , -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-CON < R_{b} \\ R_{b} , -O-(CH_{2})_{2}N < R_{b} \\ R_{b} ,$$

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-Ro

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, \qquad -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

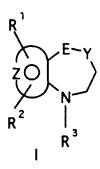
5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
 $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{9}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

-S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10}$  is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15. A compound selected from those of the formula:



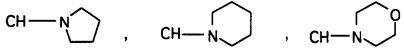
10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $C_1$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $C_1$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $C_1$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $C_1$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $C_1$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),

-183-

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

20

5

10

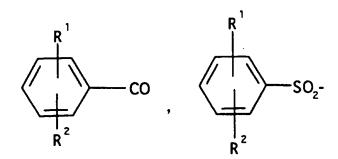
represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiophene ring, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, halogen, amino,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy or  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkylamino; R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

$$R^{5}$$
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{7}$ 
 $R^{4}$ 
 $R^{5}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{5}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{7}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 
 $R^{6}$ 

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3),

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-184-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

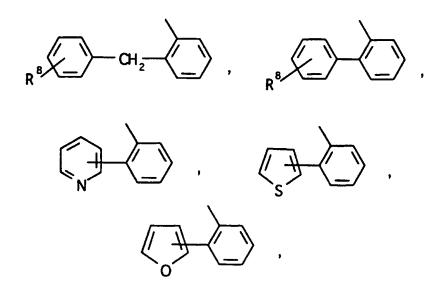
$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{R_{b}}{\swarrow} -(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{}{\searrow} ,$$
 $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \stackrel{}{\searrow} O ,$ 

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



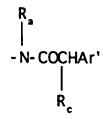
or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), CHO, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) lower alkoxy, - $CO_2$ -lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O | | -O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_{2})_{2}-N < R_{b}^{R_{b}} , -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-CON < R_{b}^{R_{b}} ,$$
 
$$-NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b}^{R_{b}} , -O-(CH_{2})_{2}N < R_{b}^{R_{b}} ,$$

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-Rd

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-189-

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, \qquad -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$R^{8}$$
 $R^{9}$ 
 $R^{9}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 
 $R^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);  $R^7$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>;  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

16. A compound selected from those of the formula:

10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

-CH2CH2- and when Y is -CH2-, E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,

$$CH-N$$
 ,  $CH-N$  ,  $CH-N$ 

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )<sub>m</sub> -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

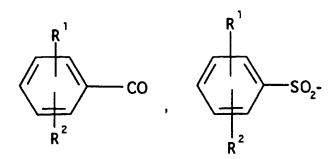
20

5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrazole ring, optionally substituted by a substitutent selected from  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, halogen, amino,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy or  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkylamino;

10 R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),



-SO2-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

WO 96/22294

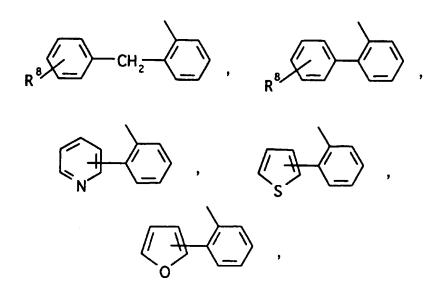
cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

$$-(CH_2)_q - N < R_b \qquad -(CH_2)_q - N$$

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

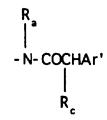
10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2-lower$  alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-196-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O 
$$\parallel$$
 -O-C-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N < R_b -NH(CH_2)_q-CON < R_b ,$$

$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N \stackrel{R_b}{< R_b}$$
,  $-O-(CH_2)_2N \stackrel{R_b}{< R_b}$ 

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

 $-M-R_{c}$ 

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

10

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, -(CH$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
  $\mathbb{R}^{8}$   $\mathbb{R}^{9}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);  $R^7$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>;  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and; R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

17. A compound selected from those of the formula:

10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

 $-CH_2CH_2-$  and when Y is  $-CH_2-$ , E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -C[N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,

$$CH-N$$
 ,  $CH-N$  ,  $CH-N$ 

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

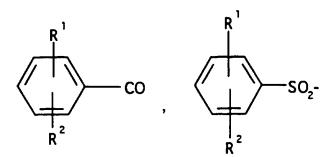
20

5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic oxazole ring, optionally substituted by a substitutent selected from  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, halogen, amino,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy or  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkylamino;

10 R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3),



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkyl, ( $C_1$ - $C_3$ )lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b}$$
,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N$ , ,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N$ ,  $O$ ,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_b$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

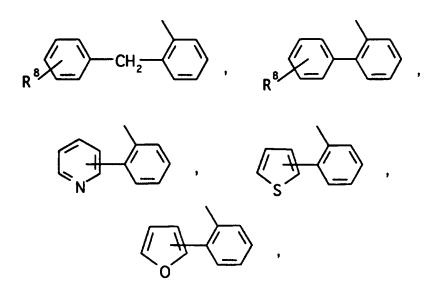
(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-203-



or -CH<sub>2</sub>-K' wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

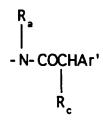
5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2$ -lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

-204-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O  $\parallel$  -O-C-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_2)_2-N \stackrel{R_b}{\swarrow} , \qquad -NH(CH_2)_q-CON \stackrel{R_b}{\swarrow} ,$$
 
$$-NH(CH_2)_q-N \stackrel{R_b}{\swarrow} , \qquad -O-(CH_2)_2N \stackrel{R_b}{\swarrow} ,$$

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-Rd

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) where M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, \qquad -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

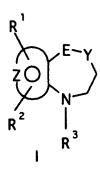
5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{8}$$
  $\mathbb{R}^{8}$   $\mathbb{R}^{9}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

-S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10}$  is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

18. A compound selected from those of the formula:



10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

 $-CH_2CH_2-$  and when Y is  $-CH_2-$ , E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,

$$CH-N$$
 ,  $CH-N$  ,  $CH-N$ 

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ),

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-207-

$$C$$

$$OH$$

$$loweralkyl (C1-C6)$$

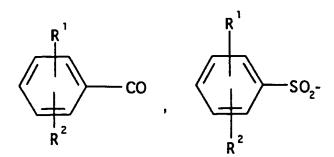
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic isoxazole ring, optionally substituted by a substitutent selected from  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, halogen, amino,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy or  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkylamino;

10 R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C1-C3), -CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3),



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow R_{b}$$
,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow$ ,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N \nearrow O$ ,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three,  $R_b$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-211-

or -CH<sub>2</sub>-K' wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

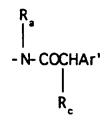
10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2$ -lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

WO 96/22294

-212-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O 
$$\parallel$$
 -O-C-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_{2})_{2}-N < \begin{matrix} R_{b} \\ R_{b} \end{matrix}, -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-CON < \begin{matrix} R_{b} \\ R_{b} \end{matrix}, \\ -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < \begin{matrix} R_{b} \\ R_{b} \end{matrix}, -O-(CH_{2})_{2}N < \begin{matrix} R_{b} \\ R_{b} \end{matrix}$$

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-Rd

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH2)p-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-213-

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}, \qquad -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{3}$$
  $\mathbb{R}^{8}$   $\mathbb{R}^{9}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$   $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10}$  is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

19. A compound selected from those of the formula:

10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub> and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:

15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CH-S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH2, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ )]2,

$$CH-N$$
,  $CH-N$ ,  $CH-N$ 

-CHOCO-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )mNH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-N[lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ )]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-S-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )m-O-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-215-

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6; and the moiety:

20

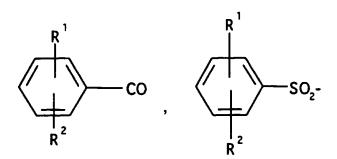
5

15

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiazole ring, optionally substituted by a substitutent selected from  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, halogen, amino,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy or  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkylamino;

10 R3 is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

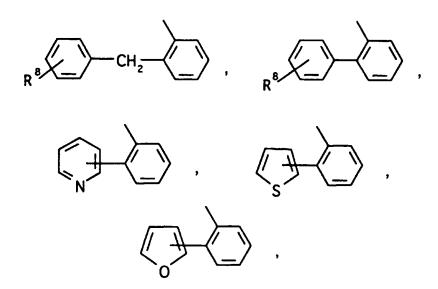
$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b}$$
,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N > 0$ ,  $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N > 0$ ,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



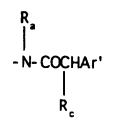
or -CH2-K' wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2-lower$  alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O 
$$\parallel$$
 -O-C-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

-M-R

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} , \qquad -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

$$\mathbb{R}^{5}$$
 $\mathbb{R}^{8}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{9}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 
 $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ 

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

10

- -S-lower alkyl(C1-C3), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl(C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and; R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.
- 20. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dichlorobenzamide.
- 21. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide.
- 22. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-15 [(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 23. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2-furanecarboxamide.
- 24. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-4-tert-butylbenzamide.
  - 25. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-
- 25 carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide.
  - 26. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-4-(n-butyl)benzamide.
- 27. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-30 [(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide.
  - 28. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide.
- 35 29. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-y1)-

10

25

carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide.

- . 30. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide.
- 5 31. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethylbenzamide.
  - 32. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4- $[(5,6,7,8-\text{tetrahydro-}4\underline{H}-\text{thieno}[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-$ carbonyl]phenyl]benzeneacetamide.
  - 33. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide.
- 34. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-15 [(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide.
  - 35. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-3-cyclohexenecarboxamide.
- 20 36. The compound according to Claim 1, 2,4-dichloro-N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]benzamide.
  - 37. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 38. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide.
- 39. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-30 [(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 40. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide.
- 35 41. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4- [(2-chloro-5, 6, 7, 8-tetrahydro-4 $\underline{H}$ -thieno[3, 2-b]azepin-4-

- yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
- 42. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
- 5 43. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenz-amide.
- 44. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-10 [(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 45. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[ $(5,6,7,8-\text{tetrahydro-}8-\text{oxo-}4\underline{H}-\text{thieno}[3,2-\text{b}]$ azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide.
- 15 46. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 47. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  $[(5,6,7,8-\text{tetrahydro-8-oxo-4}\underline{H}-\text{thieno}[3,2-b]$ azepin-4-

yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

- 48. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
- 49. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-25 [3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]thiazepin-1(2H)-y1)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide.
  - 50. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-
- 30 carboxamide

20

- 51. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]thiazepin-1(2H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-thiophenecarboxamide.
- 52. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-35 [(3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]thiazepin-1(2H)-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.

- 53. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide.
- 54. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-5 [(5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 55. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
- 56. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-[5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.
  - 57. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)car-bonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.
  - 58. A process to prepare compounds of the general Formula I:

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

20

15

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:

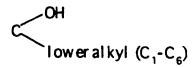
- -CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),
- 25 -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -C[N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ -

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-226-

C6) ]2,

-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub> -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -CHNH( $CH_2$ )<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl( $C_1$ -C6)]2; -CHNH(CH2) $_m$ -S-lower alkyl(C1-C6), -CHNH(CH2) $_m$ -Olower alkyl(C1-C6),



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ -C6), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

10 and the moiety:



represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from (C1-C3) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C1-C3) lower alkoxy 15 or (C1-C3)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) hetero-cyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) 20 heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C1-C3)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C1-C3)lower alkoxy; R<sup>3</sup> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the

group consisting of:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-227-

wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH3 and -NCOCH3;  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

$$R^1$$
 $CO$ 
 $R^2$ 
 $SO_2$ 

5

10

-SO2-lower alkyl(C1-C3);  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^5$  is selected from hydrogen, (C1-C3)lower alkyl, (C1-C3)lower alkoxy and halogen;  $R^6$  is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C3-C6) cycloalkyl,

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH3 or -C2H5,

$$-(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b}$$
 $-(CH_{2})_{q}-N > (CH_{2})_{q}-N > (CH_{2})_{q}-N > 0$ 

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

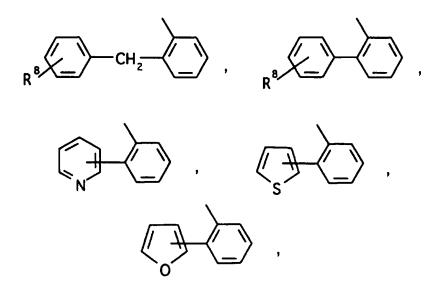
(b) a moiety of the formula:



wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C3-C8) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-230-



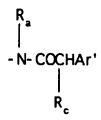
or  $-CH_2-K'$  wherein K' is  $(C_1-C_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

5

10

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , CHO,  $(C_1-C_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-CO_2-lower$  alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , and  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(C_1-C_3)$ lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl  $(C_1-C_3)$ , OH,

O | | | - O-C-lower alkyl(
$$C_1$$
- $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

$$-S-(CH_{2})_{2}-N < R_{b} -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-CON < R_{b} -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b} -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b} -O-(CH_{2})_{2}N < R_{b} -NH(CH_{2})_{q}-N < R_{b} -NH(CH_{2})_{q}$$

wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined; (d) a moiety of the formula:

wherein R<sub>d</sub> is lower alkyl(C3-C8), lower alkenyl(C3-C8), or  $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl(C3-C6) when M is O, S, NH, NCH3, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

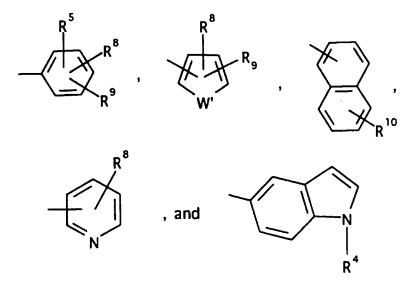
WO 96/22294 PCT/US96/01096

-232-

$$-(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} -(CH_{2})_{p} \xrightarrow{R^{1}}$$

wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH3; wherein  $\mathbb{R}^1$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) NHCO-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), and NSO2lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ );  $R^7$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, O-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ) and CF3;  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), -S-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl( $C_1$ - $C_3$ ),

10

5

-N-[lower alkyl(C1-C3)]2, -OCF3, -OH, -CN, -S-CF3, -NO2, -NH2, O-lower alkyl(C1-C3), NHCO lower alkyl(C1-C3), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C1-C3), -N(Rb)(CH2)q-N(Rb)2 and CF3 and;  $R^{10}$  is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C1-C3); which comprises reacting a compound of the formula:

with a compound of the formula:

wherein Q is a halogen or an activating group, which results from conversion of an aryl carboxylic acid to an acid chloride, mixed anhydride or from activation with a peptide coupling reagent to give compounds of the Formula I.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

interes al Application No PC7/US 96/01096

| A. CLA                | SSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER  | PC   | 7,JS 96/01096                  |
|-----------------------|--|--|--------------------------------|
|                       | 6 C07D495/04 C07D487/04 C07<br>//(C07D495/04,333:00,223:00),<br>(C07D471/04,223:00,221:00),(C0 | 0471/04 A61K31/55<br>(C07D487/04,237:00,2                    | C07D513/04                     |
| 0. 1.151              | DS SEARCHED  | il classification and IPC                                    | •                              |
| Minimum<br>I DC 6     | n documentation searched (classification system followed by cl<br>CO7D A61K                    | ASS (ICADOS CIPACIO)   |                                |
|                       | - Total  |  |                                |
| Documen               | Hation searched other than minimum documentation to the exte                                   | nt that such documents are included in                       | the fields                     |
|                       |  |  | ane neith serrened             |
| Electronic            | data base consulted during the international executions  |  |                                |
|                       | data base committed during the international search (name of d                                 | ala base and, where practical, search                        | terms used)                    |
|                       |  |  |                                |
| C. DOCU               | MENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT  |  |                                |
| Category *            |  |  |                                |
|                       | под при  | Relevant to claim No.  |                                |
| X                     | EP,A,O 620 216 (FUJISAWA) 19 October 1994 cited in the application see claim 1                 |  | 1                              |
| 4                     | EP,A,0 620 003 (OTSUKA) 19 Oct<br>see claim 1  | 1  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
|                       |  |  |                                |
| <del>_</del> 1        |  |  |                                |
| Furt                  | her documents are listed in the continuation of box C.   | X Patent family members a                                    | are listed in annex.           |
| Special cat           | regories of cited documents :  |  |                                |
| docume                | ent defining the general state of the art which is not<br>tred to be of paracular relevance    | T later document published and or priority date and not in o |                                |
| filing d              | document but published on or after the internal  | invention  | iple or theory underlying the  |
| docume                | Til Which may throw deather an annual  | "X" document of particular releva                            |                                |
| CILLON                | or other special reason (as mention)   | 'Y' document of parneular releva                             | en the document is taken alone |
|                       |  | document is combined with                                    | we an inventive step when the  |
| document<br>later the | nt published prior to the international filing date but<br>an the priority date claimed        | in the art.  | ng obvious to a person sinlied |
| te of the a           | ictual completion of the international search  | A document member of the sam                                 |                                |
| 24                    | May 1996   | Date of mailing of the interna<br>-4.06.96                   | Bonal search report            |
| me and m              | ailing address of the ISA  | Authorized officer   |                                |
|                       | European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentiaan 2<br>NL - 2280 HV Ramwik                          | United Office.   |                                |
|                       | Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo ni,<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016                           | Voyiazoglou,   | ,                              |
|                       |  | 103 10209 100,   | ا                              |

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

.aformation on patent family members

Inter nal Application No PCT/US 96/01096

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date | Patent family member(s)                            |   | Publication date   |
|--|------------------|--|---|--|
| EP-A-620216                            | 19-10-94         | AU-B-<br>CA-A-<br>CN-A-<br>HU-A-<br>JP-A-<br>ZA-A- | 5932294<br>2121112<br>1098406<br>70197<br>7002800<br>9402325  | 20-10-94<br>14-10-94<br>08-02-95<br>28-09-95<br>06-01-95<br>16-02-95 |
| EP-A-620003                            | 19-10-94         | AU-B-<br>AU-B-<br>CA-A-<br>CN-A-<br>WO-A-<br>JP-A- | 663628<br>5161493<br>2124696<br>1098716<br>9408582<br>6211800 | 12-10-95<br>09-05-94<br>28-04-94<br>15-02-95<br>28-04-94<br>02-08-94 |